



# Bodleian Libraries

UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

This book is part of the collection held by the Bodleian Libraries and scanned by Google, Inc. for the Google Books Library Project.

For more information see:

<http://www.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/dbooks>



This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 UK: England & Wales (CC BY-NC-SA 2.0) licence.

VOL. XIX.

**EDUCATIONAL SERIES.**

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

OF THE

LATIN TONGUE.

By THOMAS GOODWIN, A.B.

*Price One Shilling.*

LONDON: JOHN WEALE, 1854-55.



600093778/









A PRACTICAL GRAMMAR  
OF  
THE LATIN TONGUE,

CONTAINING  
THE INFLECTIONS AND  
ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF TRANSLATION  
AND CONSTRUCTION,

Intended for Use in Schools,

AND ADAPTED  
TO THE EXIGENCIES OF SELF-INSTRUCTING STUDENTS.

BY  
THOMAS GOODWIN, A.B.  
HEAD MASTER  
OF THE GREENWICH PROPRIETARY SCHOOL.

---

London:  
JOHN WEALE, 59, HIGH HOLBORN.

MDCCCLIV.

305. c. 27

**LONDON :**  
**GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, PRINTERS,**  
**ST. JOHN'S SQUARE.**



## P R E F A C E.

---

NOTWITHSTANDING that some people, in obedience to utilitarian principles, in many instances falsely so called, have of late years sought to decry the classical languages as a medium of training for the youthful mind, they still retain their place in the curriculum of school studies ; and a knowledge of the Latin language is beginning to be cultivated *even* by those teachers who conduct national schools, more or less in amount, according as they are anxious to place their schools in a position to entitle them to look for some of the rewards proposed by Government for successful teaching. This is as it should be. Apart from the necessity of a classical education imposed on those designed for professional avocations, the training and discipline of the mind, and the exercise thereof in correct and even deep thinking induced by such studies, enable a youth accustomed thereto to exhibit, according to the testimony of every unprejudiced observer, an amount of intelligence and a vigour of mind, far, very far superior to those of the youth, who, equal to him in respect of every other advantage and endowment, has not had the opportunity of such training.

To facilitate a study so useful is the purpose of the following little work. It has long been the opinion of the writer thereof, and of many other teachers known to him,—an opinion confirmed by the practical experience of the school-room for many years,—

that something may *yet* be done to systematize the efforts of the anxious student, and obviate the many difficulties he finds in his path towards the temple of classical learning. To involve a student, after the acquisition by him of some knowledge of the inflections of words, in the perplexing mazes of the “*Propria quæ maribus*” and “*As in præsentî*”—the asses’ bridge, in too many educational establishments, even in this somewhat practical day, of Latin literature—is not only inefficient as a system of instruction, but often creates such discouragement in the mind of many a learner, as causes him to give up in disgust the attempt to acquire a knowledge of Latin as wholly unaccomplishable, and thus not unfrequently tends to swell the tide of prejudice against this *often* indispensable and *always* invigorating study. The *Delectus* commonly in use as the first introduction to Latin translation and construction, is defective in that want of arrangement and elucidation of principle after principle *progressively*, according to the capacity of the learner to understand and follow, which should exhibit themselves in the pages of a book designed for the use of a *beginner*, and especially for that class of beginners who labour without the assistance of a *vivâ voce* teacher. The distinctive plan of the following Treatise has been conceived with a view to obviate this want; and the conviction in the mind of the writer that the elucidation of a few of the great leading principles of Latin construction, by examples judiciously selected and progressively arranged, is the best method which an elementary work can adopt, has been acted on as an axiom in the execution of the plan. The sentences are from the best Latin authors, and the rules and observations thereon are so systematized, that a learner never meets with a principle of construction in *one* sentence, which has not been laid down and explained in some foregoing one. It is not meant to be asserted that rules and principles are seen to result from each other in the construction of a language, as propositions in geometry; but it *is* asserted that there exists no reason why, in a work intended to help the



student of a language out of difficulties, there should be presented to him sentences involving, to his great discouragement, principles never before grappled with. The notes on the passages quoted will be found, it is thought, serviceable to the student in comparing the idioms of the Latin with those of his own language, and, by referring back continually to the principles illustrated by particular forms of words, they make provision whereby such principles may be indelibly impressed on his memory, and at the same time render it necessary for him to think for himself, instead of leaning too much on the ill-directed assistance of others. Philological and theoretical disquisitions have been cautiously avoided, as calculated to confuse rather than inform the learner; a *copia verborum*, a matter of primary importance, is supplied in the sentences furnished; and it is confidently hoped that, when the diligent and anxious student wades through the pages of this and another book to follow on a similar plan, he will have acquired such knowledge of the principles of construction of the Latin tongue as will enable him "to swim without the cork," and master the difficulties which may be presented to him in reading the works of *any* Latin author. A book, *after all*, is but a teacher, and the legitimate province of a teacher is but to help out of difficulties. No royal road has as yet been discovered leading to the temple of learning. The writer of this little work has as little faith as any one in the utility and success of works professedly designed to make knowledge easy, and desires earnestly to impress on the minds of those who may address themselves for assistance to the following pages, that *no* aid can obviate the necessity of deep and anxious study, and *no* book, however judiciously written, can supply the place of painstaking and laborious assiduity on their part.

It is little more than three months since an arrangement was entered into with the publisher for the publication of this book. The shortness of the time permitted for the writing thereof, and the numerous distractions caused by the conduct, on the part of

the writer, of a large and important educational institution, numbering 270 pupils, together with other professional engagements, will probably cause some imperfections to attach to the work ; but it is hoped that those for whose use it is specially designed will see in it, if no more, the *one* merit of making a step in a right direction, and of, at all events, seeking to aid the great cause of popular education.

T. G.

GREENWICH, May, 1854.

# CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
<b>INTRODUCTORY REMARKS</b> .....	1
<b>ON THE NOUN</b> .....	ib.
First Declension .....	2
Second Declension .....	ib.
Third Declension .....	3
Fourth Declension .....	ib.
Fifth Declension .....	ib.
Exercises on the Declension of Nouns .....	4
<b>ON THE ADJECTIVE</b> .....	6
Declension of Adjectives .....	ib.
Comparison of Adjectives .....	7
Exercises on the Declension of Adjectives .....	8
<b>ON THE PRONOUN</b> .....	9
<b>ON THE VERB</b> .....	11
First Conjugation .....	12
Second Conjugation .....	14
Third Conjugation .....	16
Fourth Conjugation .....	19
Conjugation of Verbs Passive—First Conjugation .....	24
Second Conjugation .....	26
Third Conjugation .....	28
Fourth Conjugation .....	30
Exercises on the Verbs .....	32
Irregular Verbs .....	35
Defective Verbs .....	39
<b>THE ADVERB</b> .....	41
<b>THE PREPOSITION</b> .....	42
<b>THE CONJUNCTION</b> .....	ib.
<b>THE INTERJECTION</b> .....	ib.
<b>Definitions and Explanations of Terms used in the Latin Construction and Translation</b> .....	43
<b>LATIN CONSTRUCTION AND TRANSLATION</b> .....	44
First Set of Rules thereon .....	ib.
Sentences illustrative thereof .....	45
Instructions .....	ib.
Questions on the Analysis of the foregoing Sentences .....	48

	PAGE
Observations on foregoing Rules .....	49
Sentences illustrating the foregoing Observations .....	50
Notes on foregoing Sentences .....	53
Questions thereon .....	56
Second Set of Rules .....	57
Sentences illustrating the whole of the foregoing Rules and Observations .....	58
Notes thereon.....	62
Third Set of Rules.....	69
Sentences illustrative thereof .....	70
Notes thereon.....	82
DICTIONARY OF WORDS.....	97

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

## INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

1. ALL the words of the Latin language are subdivided, for the sake of convenience, into eight heads, called classes of words, or parts of speech.

2. These are—noun, pronoun, adjective, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, interjection.

3. Of these the four first admit of inflexion; the adverb, in some instances, admits of comparison; and the three last named are not modified in any form whatever.

4. The inflexion of a word is the change, generally of termination, it undergoes in order to the expression of a difference of idea.

5. This change, when the noun, pronoun, or adjective is referred to, is usually called *declension*; when the verb, *conjugation*.

*On the Noun, i. e. the name for any being or thing which may serve as the subject of discourse.*

6. To nouns belong gender, number, person, and case.

7. The genders of nouns are three—masculine, feminine, and neuter.

8. Some nouns, the names of animals, which may be masculine or feminine, are called *common*, as *parens*, a parent.

*Note.*—The *doubtful* gender has no existence in reality, and only means that a particular word is treated by one writer as masculine, by another as feminine.

9. The number of nouns is twofold, *singular* and *plural*; the former is used when one object is denoted, the latter when two or more.

10. The persons of nouns are three—first, second, and third. A noun standing for the speaker is said to be of the *first*, and for the



person spoken to, of the *second* person ; all other nouns, however used, are said to belong to the *third* person.

11. The case of a noun, pronoun, or adjective is the form it takes in its declension.

12. There are six cases in the Latin language—nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, and ablative.

*Note.*—The participle is sometimes regarded as a distinct class of words, but, practically considered as to its functions and declension, belongs to the class *adjective*.

13. The nouns of the Latin language, as regards their declension, are subdivided into five classes, distinguished by the termination of their genitive singular.

### FIRST DECLENSION.

The genitive singular ends in *æ*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	mensa	mensæ
Gen.	mensæ	mensarum
Dat.	mensæ	mensis
Acc.	mensam	mensas
Voc.	mensa	mensæ
Abl.	mensa	mensis.

*Note 1.* The nouns of this declension, with few exceptions, are of the feminine gender.

*Note 2.* *Filia, nata, anima, socia, serva, and asina* make the dative and ablative plural to end in *is* or *abus* ; and *dea, mula, equa, and liberta* terminate in these cases in *abus* only.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

The genitive singular ends in *i*.

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	magister	magistri
Gen.	magistri	magistorum
Dat.	magistro	magistris
Acc.	magistrum	magistros
Voc.	magister	magistri
Abl.	magistro	magistris.

*Note 1.* When the nominative singular of this declension ends in *us*, the vocative will end in *e* : as, nominative, *dominus* ; vocative, *domine*. *Deus*, however, makes *deus* in the vocative.

*Note 2.* Proper names, that is, the names of particular individuals, ending in *ius*, form the vocative by omitting the *us* : as, *Virgilius* ; vocative, *Virgili*. *Filius* and *genius* follow this rule in the formation of their vocative.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

The genitive singular ends in *is*.

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	nubes	nubes
Gen.	nubis	nubium
Dat.	nubi	nubibus
Acc.	nubem	nubes
Voc.	nubes	nubes
Abl.	nube	nubibus.

*Note 1.* The genitive plural of this declension in some words makes *um*, in others *ium*, in the termination.

*Note 2.* Nouns of the neuter gender, of whatever declension, make the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike, and these cases in the plural number end in *a*; in their other cases they follow the termination of their proper declension. This note is appended here, because nouns of the neuter gender, with but few exceptions, belong to the second or third declension.

*Note 3.* When the nominative singular of a noun of the *third* declension ends in *e*, if it be of the neuter gender, the ablative will end in *i*; and the nominative plural of such will be formed by adding *a* to the ablative; the genitive plural also will end in *ium*: thus, nominative, *hastile*; ablative, *hastili*; nominative plural, *hastilia*; genitive, *hastilium*.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

The genitive singular ends in *us*.

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	manus	manus
Gen.	manus	manuum
Dat.	manui	manibus
Acc.	manum	manus
Voc.	manus	manus
Abl.	manu	manibus.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

The genitive singular ends in *ei*.

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	acies	acies
Gen.	aciei	acierum
Dat.	aciei	aciebus
Acc.	aciem	acies
Voc.	acies	acies
Abl.	acie	aciebus.

*Notes on the five Declensions.*

1. The nominative and vocative singular of a noun, with few exceptions, which obtain mostly in the second declension (see Notes 1 and 2, Second Declension), are alike, so are also the nominative and vocative plural.

2. The dative and ablative singular of the *second* declension are alike, so also are the dative and ablative plural of *all* declensions.

The following table of the terminations of the several cases of nouns may serve in some measure to facilitate the learning thereof:—

	SING.					PLUR.				
	1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5
N.	may terminate in any manner									
G.	æ	i	is	us	ei	arum	orum	um, ium	uum	erum
D.	æ	o	i	ui	ei	is or abus	is	bus	ibus	ebus
Acc.	am	um	em	um	em	as	os	es	us	es
Voc.	like the nominative					like the nominative				
Abl.	a	o	e or i	u	e	like the dative.				

## EXERCISES ON THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

*Note.*—The learner will be careful to attend to the declension and gender of the following nouns: the former will be indicated by the genitive singular, and the latter by the initial letter of the gender of each noun. This, with attention to the notes already given, will be sufficient to ensure accuracy in every instance.

Mel, mellis, n.	<i>honey</i>	Mus, muris, m.	<i>a mouse</i>
Cor, cordis, n.	<i>the heart</i>	Sedes, sedis, f.	<i>a seat</i>
Aqua, aquæ, f.	<i>water</i>	Glacies, glaciei, f.	<i>ice</i>
Poeta, poetæ, m.	<i>a poet</i>	Imago, imaginis, f.	<i>an image</i>
Ovum, ovi, n.	<i>an egg</i>	Sal, salis, m.	<i>salt</i>
Agnus, agni, m.	<i>a lamb</i>	Pes, pedis, m.	<i>a foot</i>
Ager, agri, m.	<i>a field</i>	Digitus, digiti, m.	<i>a finger</i>
Tribus, tribus, f.	<i>a tribe</i>	Leo, leonis, m.	<i>a lion</i>
Lex, legis, f.	<i>a law</i>	Dolor, doloris, m.	<i>grief</i>
Corpus, corporis, n.	<i>a body</i>	Mens, mentis, f.	<i>the mind</i>
Cubile, cubilis, n.	<i>a bed</i>	Hastile, hastilis, n.	<i>a spear</i>
Scriba, scribæ, m.	<i>a scribe</i>	Monile, monilis, n.	<i>a necklace</i>
Virga, virgæ, f.	<i>a rod</i>	Marmor, marmoris, n.	<i>marble</i>
Flatus, flatus, m.	<i>a blast</i>	Mons, montis, m.	<i>a mountain</i>
Versus, versus, m.	<i>a verse</i>	Rex, regis, m.	<i>a king</i>
Acus, acus, f.	<i>a needle</i>	Scurra, scurræ, m.	<i>a scoffer</i>
Os, oris, n.	<i>a mouth</i>	Sponsus, sponsi, m.	<i>a bridegroom</i>
Fides, fidei, f.	<i>faith</i>	Aper, apri, m.	<i>a boar</i>
Species, speciei, f.	<i>a species</i>	Gigas, gigantis, m.	<i>a giant</i>

Crinis, crinis, m.	<i>hair</i>	Cato, Catonis, m.	<i>Cato</i>
Brachium, brachii, n.	<i>an arm</i>	Cinis, cineris, m.	<i>ashes</i>
Mas, maris, m.	<i>a male</i>	Athleta, athletæ, m.	<i>a wrestler</i>
Dens, dentis, m.	<i>a tooth</i>	Bacchus, Bacchi, m.	<i>Bacchus</i>
Arbor, arboris, f.	<i>a tree</i>	Britannia, Britanniae, f.	<i>Britain</i>
Vas, vasis, n.	<i>a vessel</i>	Conditor, conditoris, m.	<i>a builder</i>
Calcar, calcaris, n.	<i>a spur</i>	Apollo, Apollinis, m.	<i>Apollo</i>
Ars, artis, f.	<i>a trade</i>	Callis, callis, m.	<i>a path</i>
Caro, carnis, f.	<i>flesh</i>	Eboracum, Eboraci, n.	<i>York</i>
Res, rei, f.	<i>a thing</i>	Eremus, eremi, f.	<i>a desert</i>
Currus, currus, m.	<i>a chariot</i>	Fustis, fustis, m.	<i>a club</i>
Facies, faciei, f.	<i>a face</i>	Literæ <sup>b</sup> , literarum, f.	<i>an epistle</i>
Macies, maciei, f.	<i>leanness</i>	Minæ, minarum, f.	<i>trifles</i>
Pellis, pellis, f.	<i>the skin</i>	Nugæ, nugarum, f.	<i>threats</i>
Lepus, leporis, m.	<i>a hare</i>	Feriæ, feriarum, f.	<i>holidays</i>
Lapis, lapidis, m.	<i>a stone</i>	Rostra, rostrorum, n.	<i>a pulpit</i>
Græcia, Græciæ, f.	<i>Greece<sup>a</sup></i>	Extæ, extorum, n.	<i>entrails</i>
Cupressus, cupressi, f.	<i>a cypress tree</i>	Athenæ <sup>c</sup> , Athenarum, f.	<i>Athens</i>
Annus, anni, m.	<i>a year</i>	Iter, itineris, n.	<i>a journey</i>
Anna, Annæ, f.	<i>Ann</i>	Axis, axis, m.	<i>an axle-tree</i>
Anus, anus, f.	<i>an old woman</i>	Cyprus, Cypri, f.	<i>the island Cyprus</i>
Capra, capræ, f.	<i>a she-goat</i>	Caulis, caulis, m.	<i>a stalk</i>

## Notes.

*a.* Proper names have no plural, except such as want the singular.

*b.* When a noun has no singular, its declension may be ascertained by its genitive plural.

*c.* Consult note *a.*

Note also, some nouns are not declined; that is, have the same form in whatever case they may be used. Such nouns are mostly, if not always, used as nominatives and accusatives, as *fas, nefas, nihil, &c. &c.*

Some nouns, moreover, are used in some cases and not in others: as, genitive, *spontis*; ablative, *sponte*, of one's own accord. Nominative, *vis*, force; accusative, *vim*; ablative, *vi* (the latter noun has all the cases in the plural number, and is regularly declined thus:

Nom. vires	Gen. virium	Dat. viribus
Acc. vires	Voc. vires	Abl. viribus).

## ON THE ADJECTIVE.

The adjective expresses the state or quality of the noun.

The English adjective is not inflected ; the Latin adjective *is* inflected in gender, number, and case.

The Latin adjective is declined according to the declension of nouns.

The adjective in Latin is declined with three, two, and one termination.

An adjective whose nominative case singular has *three* terminations, is declined like the first and second declension of nouns ; the adjective in the feminine form is declined like the *first*, in the masculine and neuter form like the *second* declension.

An adjective whose nominative has two terminations or one, is inflected like the third declension of nouns.

When an adjective in any of its cases has three terminations, the first is masculine, the second feminine, and the third neuter ; when it has two terminations, the first is masculine and feminine, and the second neuter ; and when it has only one termination, it is of all genders.

## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

	SING.			PLUR.		
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	boni	bonæ	bona
Gen.	boni	bonæ	boni	bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
Dat.	bono	bonæ	bono		bonis	
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonos	bonas	bona
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum	boni	bonæ	bona
Abl.	bono	bona	bono		bonis.	
Nom.	tristis		te	tristes		tia
Gen.	tristis			tristium		
Dat.	tristi			tristibus		
Acc.	tristem		te	tristes		tia
Voc.	tristis		te	tristes		tia
Abl.	tristi			tristibus.		
Nom.	prudens			prudentes		tia
Gen.	prudentis			prudentium		
Dat.	prudenti			prudantibus		
Acc.	prudentem		prudens	prudentes		tia
Voc.	prudens			prudentes		tia
Abl.	prudente or i			prudantibus.		

Note 1. *Ambo* and *duo* have no singular, and have a declension peculiar to themselves.



	PLURAL.		
Nom.	ambo	ambæ	ambo
Gen.	amborum	ambarum	amborum
Dat.	ambobus	ambabus	ambobus
Acc.	ambos	ambas	ambo
Voc.	ambo	ambæ	ambo
Abl.	ambobus	ambabus	ambobus.

*Note 2.* Some adjectives of three terminations, as *unus, totus, solus, ullus, nullus, alter, uter, neuter*, unlike *bonus*, make the genitive in *ius* and the dative in *i*: thus, *unus, una, unum*; genitive, *unius*; dative, *uni*. In their other cases they follow the declension of *bonus*.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of comparison—the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

The positive is the adjective in its simple state, as *tristis*.

The comparative is formed from the first case of the positive which ends in *i*, by adding thereto *or* to make the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter: thus, dative, *tristi*; comparative, *tristior, tristius*.

*Note 1.* The first case of an adjective of one or two terminations which ends in *i* is the dative, of an adjective of three terminations is the genitive. The superlative is formed by adding *ssimus* to the same part; as, *tristi, tristissimus*.

*Note 2.* The superlative degree is declined like *bonus*. The following is a model of the declension of the comparative:—

	SING.		PLUR.	
Nom.	tristior	tristius	tristiores	tristiora
Gen.	tristioris		tristiorum	
Dat.	tristiori		tristioribus	
Acc.	tristiozem	tristius	tristiores	tristiora
Voc.	tristior	tristius	tristiores	tristiora
Abl.	tristiore	or tristiori	tristioribus.	

*Note 3.* If a vowel precede *us* in the positive, the degrees are formed usually by prefixing the adverb *magis* for the comparative, and *maxime* for the superlative: as, *pius, magis pius, maxime pius*.

*Note 4.* If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding thereto *rimus*: as, *teter*; superlative, *teterrimus*.

The following adjectives have a peculiar formation in the superlative:—

POSITIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Agilis	agillimus
Facilis	facillimus
Gracilis	gracillimus
Humilis	humillimus
Docilis	docillimus
Similis	simillimus.

The following adjectives are irregular in their comparison :—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Bonus	melior	optimus
Malus	pejor	pessimus
Magnus	major	maximus
Parvus	minor	minimus
Multus	plus	plurimus
Dives	ditior	ditissimus
Nequam	nequior	nequissimus
Exterus	exterior	extremus
Inferus	inferior	infimus, imus
Posterus	posterior	postremus
Superus	superior	supremus, summus
	interior	intimus
Juvenis	junior	
Senex	senior	
	prior	primus
	propior	proximus
	ulterior	ultimus
	deterior	detrerrimus
	anterior.	

*Note.*—Some adjectives having no superlative of their own, procure it by a combination of words: thus, *senex*, old, makes *maximus natu*, the greatest by age, *i. e.* oldest; *juvenis*, young, *minimus natu*, least by age, *i. e.* youngest.

### EXERCISES ON THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

Durus, a, um, <i>hard</i>	} like bonus.
Tener, a, um, <i>tender</i>	
Pulcher, chra, chrum, <i>beautiful</i>	
Gelidus, a, um, <i>cold</i>	
Squalidus, a, um, <i>filthy</i>	
Facillimus, a, um, <i>most easy</i>	

Impubis, e, <i>beardless</i>	}	like tristis.
Humilis, e, <i>low or humble</i>		
Agilis, e, <i>nimble</i>		
Facilis, e, <i>easy</i>		
Gravis, e, <i>weighty</i>		
Iners, Gen. inertis, <i>sluggish</i>	}	like prudens.
Anceps, — ancipitis, <i>doubtful</i>		
Amans, — amantis, <i>loving</i>		
Audax, — audacis, <i>daring</i>		
Ferox, — ferocis, <i>fierce</i>		
Inops, — inopis, <i>poor</i>		
Durior, us, Gen. durioris, <i>harder</i>	}	like tristior.
Puchrior, us, — oris, <i>fairer</i>		
Humilior, us, — — <i>more humble</i>		
Facilior, us, — — <i>easier</i>		
Agilior, us, — — <i>more nimble</i>		

ON THE PRONOUN.

A pronoun (*pro*, for, *nomen*, a name) is a word used instead of a noun.

Pronouns admit of person, gender, number, and case. They are usually classified into personal, possessive, demonstrative, and relative; and, unlike the noun and the adjective, are not reducible as to their inflexion to any heads or classes.

The personal pronouns are *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, and are thus declined:—

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	ego	nos	tu	vos
Gen.	mei	nostrum, nostri	tui	vestrum, vestri
Dat.	mihī	nobis	tibi	vobis
Acc.	me	nos	te	vos
Voc.	wanting	wanting	tu	vos
Abl.	me	nobis.	te	vobis.

*Sui* has only some cases, and is the same in both numbers.

Gen.	sui	Acc.	se and sese
Dat.	sibi	Abl.	se and sese.

The possessive pronouns are *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *cujus*, *noster*, *vester*; they are declined like *bonus*, except that *meus* makes *mi* in the vocative singular, masculine gender; and that all the others, except *noster*, want the vocative.

*Note.*—*Nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujas* are declined like an adjective of one termination: thus, nominative, *nostras*; genitive, *nostratis*, &c. &c.

The demonstrative pronouns are *hic*, *ille*, *iste*, and *ipse*; and are thus declined:—

	SING.			PLUR.		
Nom.	hic	hæc	hoc	hi	hæc	hæc
Gen.		hujus		horum	harum	horum
Dat.		huic			his	
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hos	has	hæc
Voc.		wanting			wanting	
Abl.	hoc	hac	hoc		his.	
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illi	illæ	illa
Gen.		illius		illorum	illarum	illorum
Dat.		illi			illis	
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illos	illas	illa
Voc.		wanting			wanting	
Abl.	illo	illa	illo		illis.	

*Iste* is similarly declined, and also *ipse*, except that the latter makes *ipsum* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular.

	SING.			PLUR.		
Nom.	is	ea	id	ii	eæ	ea
Gen.		ejus		eorum	earum	eorum
Dat.		ei			iis or eis	
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eos	eas	ea
Voc.		wanting			wanting	
Abl.	eo	ea	eo		iis or eis.	

In like manner is declined *idem* (for *isdem*), a compound of *is*, except that in the accusative singular, masculine gender, it makes *eundem*.

The relative pronoun *qui* is thus declined:—

	SING.			PLUR.		
Nom.	qui	quæ	quod	qui	quæ	quæ
Gen.		cujus		quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.		cui		quibus or	queis	
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quæ
Voc.		wanting			wanting	
Abl.	quo	qua	quo or quî	quibus or	queis.	

The compounds of *qui* are similarly declined: *quidam*, a certain person; *quivis* and *quilibet*, any one; and *quicumque*, who-soever.

The interrogative *quis*, who, or what, is declined like *qui*, except that it makes *quid* or *quod* in the neuter.

*Aliquis*, some one, is declined like *quis*, except that its nominative singular, feminine gender, is *aliqua*.

## ON THE VERB.

A verb expresses the action of, or the receiving of an action by its subject: when the subject acts, the verb is called *active*; when it receives an act, the verb is called *passive*. These are the two great subdivisions of the verb family. Some verbs are called by other names indicative of some property connected therewith; these will be considered hereafter.

Verbs are inflected with number, person, mood, and tense.

The number and person of the verb are the same as the number and person of the noun and pronoun.

As far as inflexion is concerned, there are but four moods—the indicative, imperative, potential, and infinitive.

*Note.*—The subjunctive is the same as the potential, and is attached dependently to another verb to express some condition or limitation thereof.

The tenses are five—present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, and future.

Active verbs are classified into four heads, called conjugations, distinguished one from the other by the vowel and its quantity which precedes *re*, the termination of the infinitive mood.

The first conjugation has *ā* long before *re*, as *amāre*.

The second has *ē* long, as *docēre*.

The third has *ĕ* short, as *legĕre*.

The fourth has *ī* long, as *audīre*.

The radical parts of an active verb, *i. e.* the parts from which the others are formed, are the present indicative, the perfect indicative, and the first supine.

The radical parts of the active verb in the several conjugations are as follows:—

1	amo	amavi	amatum
2	doceo	docui	doctum
3	lego	legi	lectum
4	audio	audivi	auditum.

The following will serve as a model of the conjugation of active verbs in the several conjugations.



FIRST CONJUGATION.—*Amo.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing. am-o,	<i>I love, am loving, or do love</i>
am-as,	<i>thou lovest, art loving, or dost love</i>
am-at,	<i>he loveth, is loving, or doth love</i>
Plur. am-ámus,	<i>we love, are loving, or do love</i>
am-átis,	<i>ye love, are loving, or do love</i>
am-ant,	<i>they love, are loving, or do love.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. am-ábam,	<i>I did love, or was loving</i>
am-ábas,	<i>thou didst love, or wast loving</i>
am-ábat,	<i>he did love, or was loving</i>
Plur. am-abámus,	<i>we did love, or were loving</i>
am-abátis,	<i>ye did love, or were loving</i>
am-ábant,	<i>they did love, or were loving.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. amáv-i,	<i>I loved, or have loved</i>
amav-ísti,	<i>thou lovedst, or hast loved</i>
amav-it,	<i>he loved, or hath loved</i>
Plur. amav-imus,	<i>we loved, or have loved</i>
amav-ístis,	<i>ye loved, or have loved</i>
amav-érunt, <i>vel -ére,</i>	<i>they loved, or have loved.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. amav-eram,	<i>I had loved</i>
amav-eras,	<i>thou hadst loved</i>
amav-erat,	<i>he had loved</i>
Plur. amav-erámus,	<i>we had loved</i>
amav-erátis,	<i>ye had loved</i>
amav-erant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing. am-ábo,	<i>I shall, or will love</i>
am-ábis,	<i>thou shalt, or wilt love</i>
am-ábit,	<i>he shall, or will love</i>
Plur. am-abimus,	<i>we shall, or will love</i>
am-abitis,	<i>ye shall, or will love</i>
am-ábunt,	<i>they shall, or will love.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*No first Person.*

Sing.	am-a, am-áto,	<i>love thou, or do thou love</i>
	am-et, am-áto,	<i>love he, or let him love</i>
Plur.	am-émus,	<i>love we, or let us love</i>
	am-áte, am-atóte,	<i>love ye, or do ye love</i>
	am-ent, am-ánto,	<i>love they, or let them love.</i>

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing.	am-em,	<i>I may, or can love</i>
	am-es,	<i>thou may'st, or canst love</i>
	am-et,	<i>he may, or can love</i>
Plur.	am-émus,	<i>we may, or can love</i>
	am-étis,	<i>ye may, or can love</i>
	am-ent,	<i>they may, or can love.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	am-árem,	<i>I might, or could love</i>
	am-áres,	<i>thou might'st, or could'st love</i>
	am-áret,	<i>he might, or could love</i>
Plur.	am-áremus,	<i>we might, or could love</i>
	am-arétis,	<i>ye might, or could love</i>
	am-árent,	<i>they might, or could love.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	amav-erim,	<i>I should have loved</i>
	amav-eris,	<i>thou should'st have loved</i>
	amav-erit,	<i>he should have loved</i>
Plur.	amav-erimus,	<i>we should have loved</i>
	amav-eritis,	<i>ye should have loved</i>
	amav-erint,	<i>they should have loved.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	amav-íssem,	<i>I would have loved</i>
	amav-ísses,	<i>thou would'st have loved</i>
	amav-ísseset,	<i>he would have loved</i>
Plur.	amav-issémus,	<i>we would have loved</i>
	amav-issétis,	<i>ye would have loved</i>
	amav-íssent,	<i>they would have loved.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing.	amav-ero,	<i>I shall have loved</i>
	amav-eris,	<i>thou shalt have loved</i>
	amav-erit,	<i>he shall have loved</i>
Plur.	amav-erímus,	<i>we shall have loved</i>
	amav-erítis,	<i>ye shall have loved</i>
	amav-erint,	<i>they shall have loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Imperfect Tense.

am-āre, *to love.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

amav-ísse, *to have loved.*

Future Tense.

amatú-rum esse, *to be about to love.*

## GERUNDS.

amán-di, *of loving*amán-do, *in loving*amán-dum, *o love.*

## SUPINES.

Active.

amát-um, *to love.*

Passive.

amát-u, *to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.

amans, *loving.*Future in *rus.*amatú-rus, *about to love.*SECOND CONJUGATION.—*Moneo.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing.	mon-eo, mon-es, mon-et,	<i>I advise, am advising, or do advise thou advisest, art advising, or dost advise he adviseth, is advising, or doth advise</i>
Plur.	mon-émus, mon-étis, mon-ent,	<i>we advise, are advising, or do advise ye advise, are advising, or do advise they advise, are advising, or do advise.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	mon-ébam, mon-ébas, mon-ébat,	<i>I did advise, or was advising thou didst advise, or wast advising he did advise, or was advising</i>
Plur.	mon-ebámus, mon-ebátis, mon-ébant,	<i>we did advise, or were advising ye did advise, or were advising they did advise, or were advising.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	monu-i, monu-ísti, monu-it,	<i>I advised, or have advised thou advisedst, or hast advised he advised, or hath advised</i>
Plur.	monu-imus, monu-ístis, monu-érunt, v. -ére,	<i>we advised, or have advised ye advised, or have advised they advised, or have advised.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	monu-eram,	<i>I had advised</i>
	monu-eras,	<i>thou hadst advised</i>
	monu-erat,	<i>he had advised</i>
Plur.	monu-erámus,	<i>we had advised</i>
	monu-erátis,	<i>ye had advised</i>
	monu-erant,	<i>they had advised.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing.	moné-bo,	<i>I shall, or will advise</i>
	moné-bis,	<i>thou shalt, or wilt advise</i>
	moné-bit,	<i>he shall, or will advise</i>
Plur.	mone-bimus,	<i>we shall, or will advise</i>
	mone-bitis,	<i>ye shall, or will advise</i>
	moné-bunt,	<i>they shall, or will advise.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*No first Person.*

Sing.	mon-e, mon-éto,	<i>advise thou, or do thou advise</i>
	mon-eat, mon-éto,	<i>advise he, or let him advise</i>
Plur.	mon-eámus,	<i>advise we, or let us advise</i>
	mon-éte, mon-etóte,	<i>advise ye, or do ye advise</i>
	mon-eant, mon-énto,	<i>advise they, or let them advise.</i>

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing.	mone-am,	<i>I may, or can advise</i>
	mone-as,	<i>thou may'st, or canst advise</i>
	mone-at,	<i>he may, or can advise</i>
Plur.	mone-ámus,	<i>we may, or can advise</i>
	mone-átis,	<i>ye may, or can advise</i>
	mone-ant,	<i>they may, or can advise.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	moné-rem,	<i>I might, or could advise</i>
	mone-res,	<i>thou might'st, or could'st advise</i>
	mone-ret,	<i>he might, or could advise</i>
Plur.	mone-rémus,	<i>we might, or could advise</i>
	mone-rétis,	<i>ye might, or could advise</i>
	moné-rent,	<i>they might, or could advise.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	monu-erim,	<i>I should have advised</i>
	monu-eris,	<i>thou should'st have advised</i>
	monu-erit,	<i>he should have advised</i>
Plur.	monu-erimus,	<i>we should have advised</i>
	monu-eritis,	<i>ye should have advised</i>
	monu-erint,	<i>they should have advised.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. monu-íssem,	<i>I would have advised</i>
monu-isses,	<i>thou would'st have advised</i>
monu-isset,	<i>he would have advised</i>
Plur. monu-issémus,	<i>we would have advised</i>
monu-issétis,	<i>ye would have advised</i>
monu-issent,	<i>they would have advised.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing. monu-ero,	<i>I shall have advised</i>
monu-eris,	<i>thou shalt have advised</i>
monu-erit,	<i>he shall have advised</i>
Plur. monu-erimus,	<i>we shall have advised</i>
monu-eritis,	<i>ye shall have advised</i>
monu-erint,	<i>they shall have advised.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present, and Imperfect Tense.

mon-ēre, *to advise.*

## Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

monu-ísse, *to have advised.*

## Future Tense.

monitú-rum esse, *to be about to advise.*

## GERUNDS.

monén-di, *of advising*  
 monén-do, *in advising*  
 monén-dum, *to advise.*

## SUPINES.

Active.	Passive.
monit-um, <i>to advise.</i>	monit-u, <i>to be advised.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future in <i>rus</i> .
mo-nens, <i>advising.</i>	monitú-rus, <i>about to advise.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.—*Rego*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing. reg-o,	<i>I rule, am ruling, or do rule</i>
reg-is,	<i>thou rulest, art ruling, or dost rule</i>
reg-it,	<i>he ruleth, is ruling, or doth rule</i>
Plur. reg-imus,	<i>we rule, are ruling, or do rule</i>
reg-itis,	<i>ye rule, are ruling, or do rule</i>
reg-unt,	<i>they rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. regé-bam,	<i>I did rule, or was ruling</i>
regé-bas,	<i>thou didst rule, or wast ruling</i>
regé-bat,	<i>he did rule, or was ruling</i>
Plur. regé-bámus,	<i>we did rule, or were ruling</i>
rege-bátis,	<i>ye did rule, or were ruling</i>
regé-bant,	<i>they did rule, or were ruling.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. rex-i,	<i>I ruled, or have ruled</i>
rex-isti,	<i>thou ruledst, or hast ruled</i>
rex-it,	<i>he ruled, or hath ruled</i>
Plur. rex-imus,	<i>we ruled, or have ruled</i>
rex-istis,	<i>ye ruled, or have ruled</i>
rex-érunt, v. -ére,	<i>they ruled, or have ruled.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. rex-eram,	<i>I had ruled</i>
rex-eras,	<i>thou hadst ruled</i>
rex-erat,	<i>he had ruled</i>
Plur. rex-erámus,	<i>we had ruled</i>
rex-erátis,	<i>ye had ruled</i>
rex-erant,	<i>they had ruled.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing. reg-am,	<i>I shall, or will rule</i>
reg-es,	<i>thou shalt, or wilt rule</i>
reg-et,	<i>he shall, or will rule</i>
Plur. reg-émus,	<i>we shall, or will rule</i>
reg-étis,	<i>ye shall, or will rule</i>
reg-ent,	<i>they shall, or will rule.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*No first Person.*

Sing. reg-e, reg-ito,	<i>rule thou, or do thou rule</i>
reg-at, reg-ito,	<i>rule he, or let him rule</i>
Plur. reg-ámus,	<i>rule we, or let us rule</i>
reg-ite, reg-itóte,	<i>rule ye, or do ye rule</i>
reg-ant, reg-únto,	<i>rule they, or let them rule.</i>

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing. reg-am,	<i>I may, or can rule</i>
reg-as,	<i>thou may'st, or canst rule</i>
reg-at,	<i>he may, or can rule</i>
Plur. reg-ámus,	<i>we may, or can rule</i>
reg-átis,	<i>ye may, or can rule</i>
reg-ant,	<i>they may, or can rule.</i>



## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	reg-erem, reg-eres, reg-eret,	<i>I might, or could rule thou might'st, or could'st rule he might, or could rule</i>
Plur.	reg-erémus, reg-erétis, reg-erent,	<i>we might, or could rule ye might, or could rule they might, or could rule.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	rex-erim, rex-eris, rex-erit,	<i>I should have ruled thou should'st have ruled he should have ruled</i>
Plur.	rex-erimus, rex-eritis, rex-erint,	<i>we should have ruled ye should have ruled they should have ruled.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	rex-íssem, rex-ísses, rex-ísset,	<i>I would have ruled thou would'st have ruled he would have ruled</i>
Plur.	rex-issémus, rex-issétis, rex-íssent,	<i>we would have ruled ye would have ruled they would have ruled.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing.	rex-ero, rex-eris, rex-erit,	<i>I shall have ruled thou shalt have ruled he shall have ruled</i>
Plur.	rex-erímus, rex-erítis, rex-erint,	<i>we shall have ruled ye shall have ruled they shall have ruled.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present, and Imperfect Tense.

reg-ĕre,                      *to rule.*

## Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

rex-ísse,                      *to have ruled.*

## Future Tense.

rectú-rum esse,                      *to be about to rule.*

## GERUNDS.

regén-di,	<i>of ruling</i>
regén-do,	<i>in ruling</i>
regén-dum,	<i>to rule.</i>



## SUPINES.

Active.	Passive.
rect-um, <i>to rule.</i>	rect-u, <i>to be ruled.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future in <i>rus.</i>
reg-ens, <i>ruling.</i>	rectú-rus, <i>about to rule.</i>

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—*Audio.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing. aud-io, aud-is, aud-it,	<i>I hear, am hearing, or do hear thou hearest, art hearing, or dost hear he heareth, is hearing, or doth hear</i>
Plur. aud-ímus, aud-ítis, aud-iunt,	<i>we hear, are hearing, or do hear ye hear, are hearing, or do hear they hear, are hearing, or do hear.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. audié-bam, audié-bas, audié-bat,	<i>I did hear, or was hearing thou didst hear, or wast hearing he did hear, or was hearing</i>
Plur. audie-bámus, audie-bátis, audié-bant,	<i>we did hear, or were hearing ye did hear, or were hearing they did hear, or were hearing.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. audiv-i, audiv-isti, audiv-it,	<i>I heard, or have heard thou heard'st, or hast heard he heard, or hath heard</i>
Plur. audiv-imus, audiv-ístis, audiv-érunt, v. -ére,	<i>we heard, or have heard ye heard, or have heard they heard, or have heard.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. audiv-eram, audiv-eras, audiv-erat,	<i>I had heard thou hadst heard he had heard</i>
Plur. audiv-erámus, audiv-erátis, audiv-erant,	<i>we had heard ye had heard they had heard.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing.	audi-am, audi-es, audi-et,	<i>I shall, or will hear thou shalt, or wilt hear he shall, or will hear</i>
Plur.	audi-émus, audi-étis, audi-ent,	<i>we shall, or will hear ye shall, or will hear they shall, or will hear.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*No first Person.*

Sing.	aud-i, aud-íto, aud-iat, aud-ító,	<i>hear thou, or do thou hear hear he, or let him hear</i>
Plur.	aud-iámus, aud-íte, aud-itóte, aud-iant, aud-iúnto,	<i>hear we, or let us hear hear ye, or do ye hear hear they, or let them hear.</i>

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing.	audi-am, audi-as, audi-at,	<i>I may, or can hear thou may'st, or canst hear he may, or can hear</i>
Plur.	audi-ámus, audi-átis, audi-ant,	<i>we may, or can hear ye may, or can hear they may, or can hear.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	audí-rem, audí-res, audí-ret,	<i>I might, or could hear thou might'st, or could'st hear he might, or could hear</i>
Plur.	audi-rémus, audi-rétis, audí-rent,	<i>we might, or could hear ye might, or could hear they might, or could hear.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	audiv-erim, audiv-eris, audiv-erit,	<i>I should have heard thou should'st have heard he should have heard</i>
Plur.	audiv-erimus, audiv-eritis, audiv-erint,	<i>we should have heard ye should have heard they should have heard.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	audiv-íssem, audiv-ísses, audiv-ísset,	<i>I would have heard thou would'st have heard he would have heard</i>
Plur.	audiv-issémus, audiv-issétis, audiv-íssent,	<i>we would have heard ye would have heard they would have heard.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing.	audiv-ero,	<i>I shall have heard</i>
	audiv-eris,	<i>thou shalt have heard</i>
	audiv-erit,	<i>he shall have heard</i>
Plur.	audiv-erimus,	<i>we shall have heard</i>
	audiv-eritis,	<i>ye shall have heard</i>
	audiv-erint,	<i>they shall have heard.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present, and Imperfect Tense.

aud-īre, *to hear.*

## Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

audiv-isse, *to have heard.*

## Future Tense.

auditú-rum esse, *to be about to hear.*

## GERUNDS.

audién-di,	<i>of hearing</i>
audién-do,	<i>in hearing</i>
audién-dum,	<i>to hear.</i>

## SUPINES.

Active.	Passive.
audit-um, <i>to hear.</i>	audit-u, <i>to be heard.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future in <i>rus</i> .
audi-ens, <i>hearing.</i>	auditú-rus, <i>about to hear.</i>

*Formation of the several parts (not radical) of Active Verbs.*

From the perfect indicative are formed the pluperfect indicative, *amaveram*; perfect, pluperfect, and future potential, *amaverim, amavissem, amavero*; and perfect infinitive, *amavisse*.

From the present indicative are formed the imperfect and future indicative, *amabam, amabo*; the imperative mood; present and imperfect potential, *amem, amarem*; present infinitive, *amare*; and present participle, *amans*.

From the first supine in *um* are formed the second supine, *amatu*; future participle (in *rus*), *amaturus*; and perfect or past participle, *amatus*.

*Note.*—The mode of transition from the radical to the derived part in each conjugation may be easily seen by inspection.

The Latin *esse* serves the same purpose as the English verb *to be*, by uniting with the past participle to form several tenses of the passive voice; its inflection, therefore, is necessarily learned before that of the passive verb.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing.	sum,	<i>I am</i>
	es,	<i>thou art</i>
	est,	<i>he is</i>
Plur.	sumus,	<i>we are</i>
	estis,	<i>ye are</i>
	sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	eram,	<i>I was</i>
	eras,	<i>thou wast</i>
	erat,	<i>he was</i>
Plur.	erámus,	<i>we were</i>
	erátis,	<i>ye were</i>
	erant,	<i>they were.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	fui,	<i>I have been</i>
	fuisti,	<i>thou hast been</i>
	fuit,	<i>he hath been</i>
Plur.	fuimus,	<i>we have been</i>
	fuistis,	<i>ye have been</i>
	fuérunt, <i>vel</i> fuére,	<i>they have been.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	fueram,	<i>I had been</i>
	fueras,	<i>thou hadst been</i>
	fuerat,	<i>he had been</i>
Plur.	fuerámus,	<i>we had been</i>
	fuerátis,	<i>ye had been</i>
	fuerant,	<i>they had been.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing.	ero,	<i>I shall, or will be</i>
	eris,	<i>thou shalt, or wilt be</i>
	erit,	<i>he shall, or will be</i>
Plur.	erimus,	<i>we shall, or will be</i>
	eritis,	<i>ye shall, or will be</i>
	erunt,	<i>they shall, or will be.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*No first Person.*

Sing.	sis, es, esto,	<i>be thou</i>
	sit, esto,	<i>be he, or let him be</i>
Plur.	simus,	<i>be we, or let us be</i>
	sitis, este, estóte,	<i>be ye</i>
	sint, sunt,	<i>be they, or let them be.</i>

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing.	sim, sis, sit,	<i>I may, or can be thou may'st, or canst be he may, or can be</i>
Plur.	simus, sitis, sint,	<i>we may, or can be ye may, or can be they may, or can be.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	essem, <i>vel</i> forem, esses, <i>vel</i> fores, esset, <i>vel</i> foret,	<i>I might, or could be thou might'st, or could'st be he might, or could be</i>
Plur.	essémus, <i>vel</i> forémus, essétis, <i>vel</i> forétis, essent, <i>vel</i> forent.	<i>we might, or could be ye might, or could be they might, or could be.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	fuerim, fueris, fuerit,	<i>I may, or should have been thou may'st, or should'st have been he may, or should have been</i>
Plur.	fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint,	<i>we may, or should have been ye may, or should have been they may, or should have been.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	fuissem, fuissem, fuisset,	<i>I might, or would have been thou might'st, or would'st have been he might, or would have been</i>
Plur.	fuissemus, fuissetis, fuisissent,	<i>we might, or would have been ye might, or would have been they might, or would have been.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing.	fuiro, fueris, fuerit,	<i>I shall have been thou shalt have been he shall have been</i>
Plur.	fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint,	<i>we shall have been ye shall have been they shall have been.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present, and Imperfect Tense.

esse, *to be.*

## Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

fuisse, *to have been.*

## Future Tense.

fore, *vel* futúrum esse, *to be about to be.*

Participle of the future in *rus.*

Futúrus, *about to be.*

## CONJUGATION OF VERBS PASSIVE.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—*Amor.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing.	am-or,	<i>I am loved</i>
	am-áris, <i>v.</i> am-áre,	<i>thou art loved</i>
	am-átur,	<i>he is loved</i>
Plur.	am-ámur,	<i>we are loved</i>
	am-ámini,	<i>ye are loved</i>
	am-antur,	<i>they are loved.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	am-ábar,	<i>I was loved</i>
	am-abáris, <i>v.</i> -abáre,	<i>thou wast loved</i>
	am-abátur,	<i>he was loved</i>
Plur.	am-abámur,	<i>we were loved</i>
	am-abámini,	<i>ye were loved</i>
	am-abántur,	<i>they were loved.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	amát-us sum, <i>v.</i> fui,	<i>I have been loved</i>
	amat-us es, <i>v.</i> fuisti,	<i>thou hast been loved</i>
	amat-us est, <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>he hath been loved</i>
Plur.	amat-i sumus, <i>v.</i> fuimus,	<i>we have been loved</i>
	amat-i estis, <i>v.</i> fuístis,	<i>ye have been loved</i>
	amat-i sunt, fuerunt, <i>v.</i> -ére,	<i>they have been loved.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	amát-us eram, <i>v.</i> fueram,	<i>I had been loved</i>
	amat-us eras, <i>v.</i> fueras,	<i>thou hadst been loved</i>
	amat-us erat, <i>v.</i> fuerat,	<i>he had been loved</i>
Plur.	amat-i erámus <i>v.</i> fuerámus,	<i>we had been loved</i>
	amat-i erátis, <i>v.</i> fuerátis,	<i>ye had been loved</i>
	amat-i erant, <i>v.</i> fuerant,	<i>they had been loved.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing.	am-ábor,	<i>I shall, or will be loved</i>
	am-aberis, <i>v.</i> -abere,	<i>thou shalt, or wilt be loved</i>
	am-abitur,	<i>he shall, or will be loved</i>
Plur.	am-abimur,	<i>we shall, or will be loved</i>
	am-abimini,	<i>ye shall, or will be loved</i>
	am-abúntur,	<i>they shall, or will be loved.</i>



## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	am-áre, am-átor,	<i>be thou loved</i>
	am-étur, am-átor,	<i>let him be loved</i>
Plur.	am-émur,	<i>let us be loved</i>
	am-ámini, am-áminor,	<i>be ye loved</i>
	am-éntur, am-ántor,	<i>let them be loved.</i>

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing.	am-er,	<i>I may, or can be loved</i>
	am-éris, <i>v.</i> am-ére,	<i>thou may'st, or canst be loved</i>
	am-étur,	<i>he may, or can be loved</i>
Plur.	am-émur,	<i>we may, or can be loved</i>
	am-émini,	<i>ye may, or can be loved</i>
	am-éntur,	<i>they may, or can be loved.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	am-árer,	<i>I might, or could be loved</i>
	am-areris, <i>v.</i> -arere,	<i>thou might'st, or could'st be loved</i>
	am-arétur,	<i>he might, or could be loved</i>
Plur.	am-arémur,	<i>we might, or could be loved</i>
	am-arémini,	<i>ye might, or could be loved</i>
	am-arentur,	<i>they might, or could be loved.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	amát-us sim, <i>v.</i> fuerim,	<i>I should have been loved</i>
	amat-us sis, <i>v.</i> fueris,	<i>thou should'st have been loved</i>
	amat-us sit, <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>he should have been loved</i>
Plur.	amat-i simus, <i>v.</i> fuerimus,	<i>we should have been loved</i>
	amat-i sitis, <i>v.</i> fueritis,	<i>ye should have been loved</i>
	amat-i sint, <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>they should have been loved.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	amát-us essem, <i>v.</i> fuissem,	<i>I would have been loved</i>
	amat-us esses, <i>v.</i> fuisses,	<i>thou would'st have been loved</i>
	amat-us esset, <i>v.</i> fuisset,	<i>he would have been loved</i>
Plur.	amat-i essémus, <i>v.</i> fuissémus,	<i>we would have been loved</i>
	amat-i essétis, <i>v.</i> fuissétis,	<i>ye would have been loved</i>
	amat-i essent, <i>v.</i> fuissent,	<i>they would have been loved.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing.	amát-us ero, <i>v.</i> fuero,	<i>I shall have been loved</i>
	amat-us eris, <i>v.</i> fueris,	<i>thou shalt have been loved</i>
	amat-us erit, <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>he shall have been loved</i>
Plur.	amat-i erimus, <i>v.</i> fuerimus,	<i>we shall have been loved</i>
	amat-i eritis, <i>v.</i> fueritis,	<i>ye shall have been loved</i>
	amat-i erunt, <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>they shall have been loved.</i>



## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present, and Imperfect Tense.

am-ári, *to be loved.*

## Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

amát-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been loved.*

## Future Tense.

amát-um iri, *to be about to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## The Perfect Tense.

amát-us, *loved, or being loved.*The Future in *dus*.amán-dus, *to be loved.*SECOND CONJUGATION.—*Moneor*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing.	mon-eor,	<i>I am advised</i>
	mon-éris, <i>v.</i> -ére,	<i>thou art advised</i>
	mon-étur,	<i>he is advised</i>
Plur.	mon-émur,	<i>we are advised</i>
	mon-émini,	<i>ye are advised</i>
	mon-éntur,	<i>they are advised.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	mon-ébar,	<i>I was advised</i>
	mon-ebáris, <i>v.</i> -ebáre,	<i>thou wast advised</i>
	mon-ebátur,	<i>he was advised</i>
Plur.	mon-ebámur,	<i>we were advised</i>
	mon-ebámini,	<i>ye were advised</i>
	mon-ebántur,	<i>they were advised.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	monit-us sum, <i>v.</i> fui,	<i>I have been advised</i>
	monit-us es, <i>v.</i> fuisti,	<i>thou hast been advised</i>
	monit-us est, <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>he hath been advised</i>
Plur.	monit-i sumus, <i>v.</i> fuimus,	<i>we have been advised</i>
	monit-i estis, <i>v.</i> fuistis,	<i>ye have been advised</i>
	monit-i sunt, fuérunt, <i>v.</i> fuére,	<i>they have been advised.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	monit-us eram, <i>v.</i> fueram,	<i>I had been advised</i>
	monit-us eras, <i>v.</i> fueras,	<i>thou hadst been advised</i>
	monit-us erat, <i>v.</i> fuerat,	<i>he had been advised</i>
Plur.	monit-i erámus, <i>v.</i> fuerámus,	<i>we had been advised</i>
	monit-i erátis, <i>v.</i> fuerátis,	<i>ye had been advised</i>
	monit-i erant, <i>v.</i> fuerant,	<i>they had been advised.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing. mon-ébor, mon-eberis, <i>v.</i> -ebere, mon-ebitur,	<i>I shall, or will be advised thou shalt, or wilt be advised he shall, or will be advised</i>
Plur. mon-ebimur, mon-ebimini, mon-ebúntur	<i>we shall, or will be advised ye shall, or will be advised they shall, or will be advised.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. mon-ére, mon-étor, mon-eátor, mon-étor,	<i>be thou advised let him be advised</i>
Plur. mon-eámur, mon-emini, mon-eminor, mon-eántur, mon-éntor,	<i>let us be advised be ye advised let them be advised.</i>

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing. mon-ear, mon-eáris, <i>v.</i> mon-eáre, mon-eátor,	<i>I may, or can be advised thou may'st, or canst be advised he may, or can be advised</i>
Plur. mon-eámur, mon-eámini, mon-eántur,	<i>we may, or can be advised ye may, or can be advised they may, or can be advised.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. mon-érer, mon-eréris, <i>v.</i> -erére, mon-erétur,	<i>I might, or could be advised thou might'st, or could'st be advised he might, or could be advised</i>
Plur. mon-erémur, mon-erémini, mon-eréntur,	<i>we might, or could be advised ye might, or could be advised they might, or could be advised.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. monit-us sim, <i>v.</i> fuerim, monit-us sis, <i>v.</i> fueris, monit-us sit, <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>I should have been advised thou should'st have been advised he should have been advised</i>
Plur. monit-i simus, <i>v.</i> fuerimus, monit-i sitis, <i>v.</i> fueritis, monit-i sint, <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>we should have been advised ye should have been advised they should have been advised.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. monit-us essem, <i>v.</i> fuissem, monit-us esses, <i>v.</i> fuisses, monit-us esset, <i>v.</i> fuisset,	<i>I would have been advised thou would'st have been advised he would have been advised</i>
Plur. monit-i essémus, <i>v.</i> fuissémus, monit-i essétis, <i>v.</i> fuissétis, monit-i essent, <i>v.</i> fuissent,	<i>we would have been advised ye would have been advised they would have been advised.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing.	monit-us ero, <i>v. fuero,</i>	<i>I shall have been advised</i>
	monit-us eris, <i>v. fueris,</i>	<i>thou shalt have been advised</i>
	monit-us erit, <i>v. fuerit,</i>	<i>he shall have been advised</i>
Plur.	monit-i erimus, <i>v. fuerimus,</i>	<i>we shall have been advised</i>
	monit-i eritis, <i>v. fueritis,</i>	<i>ye shall have been advised</i>
	monit-i erunt, <i>v. fuerint,</i>	<i>they shall have been advised.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present, and Imperfect Tense.

mon-éri, *to be advised.*

## Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

monit-um esse, *vel fuisse,* *to have been advised.*

## Future Tense.

monit-um iri, *to be about to be advised.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## The Perfect Tense.

monit-us, *advised, or being advised.*

The Future in *dus*.

monén-dus, *to be advised.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.—*Regor*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing.	reg-or,	<i>I am ruled</i>
	reg-eris, <i>v. reg-ere,</i>	<i>thou art ruled</i>
	reg-itur,	<i>he is ruled</i>
Plur.	reg-imur,	<i>we are ruled</i>
	reg-imini,	<i>ye are ruled</i>
	reg-úntur,	<i>they are ruled.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	reg-ébar,	<i>I was ruled</i>
	reg-ebáris, <i>v. -ebáre,</i>	<i>thou wast ruled</i>
	reg-ebátur,	<i>he was ruled</i>
Plur.	reg-ebámur,	<i>we were ruled</i>
	reg-ebámini,	<i>ye were ruled</i>
	reg-ebántur,	<i>they were ruled.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	rect-us sum, <i>v. fui,</i>	<i>I have been ruled</i>
	rect-us es, <i>v. fuisti,</i>	<i>thou hast been ruled</i>
	rect-us est, <i>v. fuit,</i>	<i>he hath been ruled</i>
Plur.	rect-i sumus, <i>v. fuimus,</i>	<i>we have been ruled</i>
	rect-i estis, <i>v. fuistis,</i>	<i>ye have been ruled</i>
	rect-i sunt, <i>fuérunt, v. fuére,</i>	<i>they have been ruled.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	rect-us eram, v. fueram,	<i>I had been ruled</i>
	rect-us eras, v. fueras,	<i>thou hadst been ruled</i>
	rect-us erat, v. fuerat,	<i>he had been ruled</i>
Plur.	rect-i erámus, v. fuerámus,	<i>we had been ruled</i>
	rect-i erátis, v. fuerátis,	<i>ye had been ruled</i>
	rect-i erant, v. fuerant,	<i>they had been ruled.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing.	reg-ar,	<i>I shall, or will be ruled</i>
	reg-éris, v. reg-ére,	<i>thou shalt, or wilt be ruled</i>
	reg-étur,	<i>he shall, or will be ruled</i>
Plur.	reg-émur,	<i>we shall, or will be ruled</i>
	reg-émini,	<i>ye shall, or will be ruled</i>
	reg-éntur,	<i>they shall, or will be ruled.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	reg-ere, reg-itor,	<i>be thou ruled</i>
	reg-átur, reg-itor,	<i>let him be ruled</i>
Plur.	reg-ámur,	<i>let us be ruled</i>
	reg-ímini, reg-íminor,	<i>be ye ruled</i>
	reg-ántur, reg-úntor,	<i>let them be ruled.</i>

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing.	reg-ar,	<i>I may, or can be ruled</i>
	reg-áris, v. reg-áre,	<i>thou may'st, or canst be ruled</i>
	reg-átur,	<i>he may, or can be ruled</i>
Plur.	reg-ámur,	<i>we may, or can be ruled</i>
	reg-ámini,	<i>ye may, or can be ruled</i>
	reg-ántur,	<i>they may, or can be ruled.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	reg-erer,	<i>I might, or could be ruled</i>
	reg-eréris, v. reg-erére,	<i>thou might'st, or could'st be ruled</i>
	reg-erétur,	<i>he might, or could be ruled</i>
Plur.	reg-erémur,	<i>we might, or could be ruled</i>
	reg-erémini,	<i>ye might, or could be ruled</i>
	reg-eréntur,	<i>they might, or could be ruled.</i>

## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	rect-us sim, v. fuerim,	<i>I should have been ruled</i>
	rect-us sis, v. fueris,	<i>thou should'st have been ruled</i>
	rect-us sit, v. fuerit,	<i>he should have been ruled</i>
Plur.	rect-i simus, v. fuerimus,	<i>we should have been ruled</i>
	rect-i sitis, v. fueritis,	<i>ye should have been ruled</i>
	rect-i sint, v. fuerint,	<i>they should have been ruled.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	rect-us essem, <i>v. fuissem,</i>	<i>I would have been ruled</i>
	rect-us esses, <i>v. fuisses,</i>	<i>thou would'st have been ruled</i>
	rect-us esset, <i>v. fuisset,</i>	<i>he would have been ruled</i>
Plur.	rect-i essémus, <i>v. fuissémus,</i>	<i>we would have been ruled</i>
	rect-i essétis, <i>v. fuissétis,</i>	<i>ye would have been ruled</i>
	rect-i essent, <i>v. fuissent,</i>	<i>they would have been ruled.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing.	rect-us ero, <i>v. fuero,</i>	<i>I shall have been ruled</i>
	rect-us eris, <i>v. fueris,</i>	<i>thou shalt have been ruled</i>
	rect-us erit, <i>v. fuerit,</i>	<i>he shall have been ruled</i>
Plur.	rect-i erimus, <i>v. fuerimus,</i>	<i>we shall have been ruled</i>
	rect-i eritis, <i>v. fueritis,</i>	<i>ye shall have been ruled</i>
	rect-i erunt, <i>v. fuerint,</i>	<i>they shall have been ruled.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present, and Imperfect Tense.

reg-i, *to be ruled.*

## Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

réct-um esse, *vel fuisse,* *to have been ruled.*

## Future Tense.

rect-um iri, *to be about to be ruled.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## The Perfect Tense.

rect-us, *ruled, or being ruled.*

The Future in *dus*.

regén-dus, *to be ruled.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—*Audior*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing.	aud-ior,	<i>I am heard</i>
	aud-íris, <i>v. aud-íre,</i>	<i>thou art heard</i>
	aud-itur,	<i>he is heard</i>
Plur.	aud-ímur,	<i>we are heard</i>
	aud-ímini,	<i>ye are heard</i>
	aud-iúntur,	<i>they are heard.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	aud-iébar,	<i>I was heard</i>
	aud-iebáris, <i>v. aud-iebáre,</i>	<i>thou wast heard</i>
	aud-iebátur,	<i>he was heard</i>
Plur.	aud-iebámur,	<i>we were heard</i>
	aud-iebámini,	<i>ye were heard</i>
	aud-iebantur,	<i>they were heard.</i>



## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	audīt-us sum, <i>v.</i> fui,	<i>I have been heard</i>
	audit-us es, <i>v.</i> fuisti,	<i>thou hast been heard</i>
	audit-us est, <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>he hath been heard</i>
Plur.	audit-i sumus, <i>v.</i> fuimus,	<i>we have been heard</i>
	audit-i estis, <i>v.</i> fuistis,	<i>ye have been heard</i>
	audit-i sunt, fuérunt, <i>v.</i> fuére,	<i>they have been heard.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	audīt-us eram, <i>v.</i> fueram,	<i>I had been heard</i>
	audit-us, eras, <i>v.</i> fueras,	<i>thou hadst been heard</i>
	audit-us erat, <i>v.</i> fuerat,	<i>he had been heard</i>
Plur.	audit-i erámus, <i>v.</i> fuerámus,	<i>we had been heard</i>
	audit-i erátis, <i>v.</i> fuerátis,	<i>ye had been heard</i>
	audit-i erant, <i>v.</i> fuerant,	<i>they had been heard.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing.	aud-iar,	<i>I shall, or will be heard</i>
	aud-iéris, <i>v.</i> aud-iére,	<i>thou shalt, or wilt be heard</i>
	aud-iétur,	<i>he shall, or will be heard</i>
Plur.	aud-iémur,	<i>we shall, or will be heard</i>
	aud-iémini,	<i>ye shall, or will be heard</i>
	aud-iéntur,	<i>they shall, or will be heard.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	aud-íre, aud-ítor,	<i>be thou heard</i>
	aud-iátur, aud-ítor,	<i>let him be heard</i>
Plur.	aud-iámur,	<i>let us be heard</i>
	aud-imini, aud-iminor,	<i>be ye heard</i>
	aud-iántur, aud-iúntor,	<i>let them be heard.</i>

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

Sing.	aud-iar,	<i>I may, or can be heard</i>
	aud-iáris, <i>v.</i> aud-iáre,	<i>thou may'st, or canst be heard</i>
	aud-iátur,	<i>he may, or can be heard</i>
Plur.	aud-iámur,	<i>we may, or can be heard</i>
	aud-iámini,	<i>ye may, or can be heard</i>
	aud-iántur,	<i>they may, or can be heard.</i>

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	aud-írer,	<i>I might, or could be heard</i>
	aud-iréris, <i>v.</i> aud-irére,	<i>thou might'st, or could'st be heard</i>
	aud-irétur,	<i>he might, or could be heard</i>
Plur.	aud-irémur,	<i>we might, or could be heard</i>
	aud-irémini,	<i>ye might, or could be heard</i>
	aud-irentur,	<i>they might, or could be heard.</i>



## 3. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	audít-us sim, <i>v. fuerim,</i>	<i>I should have been heard</i>
	audit-us sis, <i>v. fueris,</i>	<i>thou should'st have been heard</i>
	audit-us sit, <i>v. fuerit,</i>	<i>he should have been heard</i>
Plur.	audit-i simus, <i>v. fuerimus,</i>	<i>we should have been heard</i>
	audit-i sitis, <i>v. fueritis,</i>	<i>ye should have been heard</i>
	audit-i sint, <i>v. fuerint,</i>	<i>they should have been heard.</i>

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	audít-us essem, <i>v. fuissem,</i>	<i>I would have been heard</i>
	audit-us esses, <i>v. fuisses,</i>	<i>thou would'st have been heard</i>
	audit-us esset, <i>v. fuisset,</i>	<i>he would have been heard</i>
Plur.	audit-i essémus, <i>v. fuissémus,</i>	<i>we would have been heard</i>
	audit-i essétis, <i>v. fuissétis,</i>	<i>ye would have been heard</i>
	audit-i essent, <i>v. fuissent,</i>	<i>they would have been heard.</i>

## 5. Future Tense.

Sing.	audít-us ero, <i>v. fuero,</i>	<i>I shall have been heard</i>
	audit-us eris, <i>v. fueris,</i>	<i>thou shalt have been heard</i>
	audit-us erit, <i>v. fuerit,</i>	<i>he shall have been heard</i>
Plur.	audit-i erimus, <i>v. fuerimus,</i>	<i>we shall have been heard</i>
	audit-i eritis, <i>v. fueritis,</i>	<i>ye shall have been heard</i>
	audit-i erunt, <i>v. fuerint,</i>	<i>they shall have been heard.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present, and Imperfect Tense.

aud-íri, *to be heard.*

## Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

audít-um esse, *vel fuisse,* *to have been heard.*

## Future Tense.

audit-um iri, *to be about to be heard.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## The Perfect Tense.

audít-us, *heard, or being heard.*

The Future in *dus*.

audién-dus, *to be heard.*

## EXERCISES ON THE VERBS.

Conj.	Pres. Indic.	Perf. Indic.	Pres. Infin.	1st Supine.
1	damno, <i>I condemn</i>	damnavi	damnare	damnatum
2	doceo, <i>I teach</i>	docui	docere	doctum
3	duco, <i>I lead</i>	duxí	ducere	ductum
3	incesso, <i>I provoke</i>	incessivi	incessere	incessitum
3	intelligo, <i>I understand</i>	intellexi	intelligere	intellectum
4	haurio, <i>I draw up</i>	hausi	haurire	haustum
2	jubeo, <i>I command</i>	jussi	jubere	jussum
1	do, <i>I give</i>	dedi	dare	datum

*Instructions.*

1. If it were required to give the Latin for *they will condemn*, the *first* thing to be determined is the mood and tense, the voice, number, and person of the English verb. In the present instance, it is the future tense, indicative mood, third person plural, and the active voice. Next, *damno* is the first conjugation, and must be treated like *amo*, the future of which is *amabo*, and is found by changing the *o* of the present into *abo*: thus, the future of *damno* is *damnabo*, the third plural of which, according to the model of the inflexion of the persons of this tense in the first conjugation, is *damnabunt*, which, as the nominative of the pronoun is not expressed in Latin, except for emphasis' sake, is the literal representative of the English expression, *they will condemn*.

2. *They would be given*.—Here is the passive voice, potential mood, imperfect tense, third plural. Compare the model, *amo*, which, like *do*, is the first conjugation, and observe the formation of this part:—

Indic. Pres.	Poten. Pres.	Poten. Imperf.	Passive, same Mood and Tense.
Amo	amem	amarem	amarer
Do	dem	darem	darer

Inflect *darer* in the persons, and the third plural will be found *darentur*.

3. *They would have been provoked*.—The passive voice, potential mood, pluperfect tense, third plural. Observe the formation of the part in question:—

1st Supine.	Past Part.	Pluperf. Poten. Pass.
Auditum	auditus	auditus essem, <i>vel</i> fuisset
Incessitum	incessitus	incessitus essem, <i>vel</i> fuisset.

Inflect the latter according to the model, and the third plural will be *incessiti essent, vel fuissent*, the part required.

By comparing the models of the four conjugations of the active or passive regular verbs, and observing the formation of the several parts, any part required may be found.

The following are to be translated into Latin:—

1 I might have been con-	7 I have been taught.
demned.	8 To have been condemned.
2 They would command.	9 Let us lead.
3 Ye might be understood.	10 They would have been
4 He might have given.	given.
5 They would be leading.	11 He might understand.
6 Let them understand.	12 Let us be taught.

- |                             |                                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 13 I was giving.            | 44 Let us be drawn up.         |
| 14 He had been condemned.   | 45 I am leading.               |
| 15 To be given.             | 46 To lead (1st supine).       |
| 16 Lead ye.                 | 47 To lead (infinitive).       |
| 17 I would draw up.         | 48 Let us be understood.       |
| 18 Let them be commanded.   | 49 I was given.                |
| 19 I would be teaching.     | 50 They would have drawn up.   |
| 20 To have been drawn up.   | 51 To have been drawn up.      |
| 21 To have been given.      | 52 Draw ye up.                 |
| 22 To have condemned.       | 53 I would have been led.      |
| 23 I might teach.           | 54 I did give (imperfect).     |
| 24 They would draw up.      | 55 Be ye condemned.            |
| 25 Let them provoke.        | 56 To understand (1st supine). |
| 26 We might command.        | 57 I have been teaching.       |
| 27 We might have commanded. | 58 Ye have been taught.        |
| 28 Let them be commanded.   | 59 To be teaching.             |
| 29 We understand.           | 60 Let them be commanded.      |
| 30 They teach.              | 61 I had been leading.         |
| 31 Let them provoke.        | 62 To be leading (infinitive). |
| 32 I have commanded.        | 63 To be condemned.            |
| 33 To be commanded.         | 64 Condemn ye.                 |
| 34 To have provoked.        | 65 Do ye condemn.              |
| 35 They would give.         | 66 Let them draw up.           |
| 36 I was understood.        | 67 I was drawn up.             |
| 37 They were given.         | 68 I would be led.             |
| 38 He was taught.           | 69 Ye would lead.              |
| 39 Let him be leading.      | 70 Ye would be led.            |
| 40 They would lead.         | 71 To have been leading.       |
| 41 I had been led.          | 72 Let him understand.         |
| 42 To have been condemned.  | 73 I have been provoking.      |
| 43 I am commanded.          | 74 Ye have been given.         |

*Key to the foregoing.*

*Note.*—The following answers are given, not to obviate the necessity of *close* and *anxious* study on the part of the pupil,—nothing can supply the place of such study,—but to assist in *some* cases, and encourage in *all*; the learner having the power to ascertain whether his efforts have been successful.

*Answers.*

- |                                       |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Damnatus essem, <i>vel</i> fuissem. | 5 Ducerent.                         |
| 2 Juberent.                           | 6 Intelligant, intelligunto.        |
| 3 Intelligeremini.                    | 7 Doctus sum, <i>vel</i> fui.       |
| 4 Dedisset.                           | 8 Damnatum esse, <i>vel</i> fuisse. |
|                                       | 9 Ducamus.                          |

10	Dati essent, <i>vel</i> fuissent.	48	Jubeor.
11	Intelligeret.	44	Hauriamur.
12	Doceamur.	45	Duco.
13	Dabam.	46	Ductum.
14	Damnatus erat, <i>vel</i> fuerat.	47	Ducere.
15	Dari.	48	Intelligamur.
16	Ducite, ducitote.	49	Dabar.
17	Haurirem.	50	Hausissent.
18	Jubeantur, jubentor.	51	Haustum esse, <i>vel</i> fuisse.
19	Docerem.	52	Haurite, hauritote.
20	Haustum esse, <i>vel</i> fuisse.	53	Ductus essem, <i>vel</i> fuissem.
21	Datum esse, <i>vel</i> fuisse.	54	Dabam.
22	Damnavisse.	55	Damnami, damnaminor.
23	Docerem.	56	Intellectum.
24	Haurirent.	57	Docui.
25	Incessant, incessunto.	58	Docti estis, <i>vel</i> fuistis.
26	Juberemus.	59	Docere.
27	Jussissemus.	60	Jubeantur, jubentor.
28	See answer 18.	61	Duxeram.
29	Intelligimus.	62	Ducere.
30	Docent.	63	Damnari.
31	See 25.	64	Damnate, damnatote.
32	Jussi.	65	The same.
33	Juberi.	66	Hauriant, hauriunto.
34	Incessivisse.	67	Hauriebar.
35	Darent.	68	Ducerer.
36	Intelligebar.	69	Duceretis.
37	Dabantur.	70	Duceremini.
38	Docebatur.	71	Duxisse.
39	Ducat, ducito.	72	Intelligat, intelligito
40	Ducerent.	73	Incessivi.
41	Ductus eram, <i>vel</i> fueram.	74	Dati estis, <i>vel</i> fuistis.
42	Damnatum esse, <i>vel</i> fuisse.		

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregularities prevail in the conjugation of certain Latin verbs, as in the verbs of other languages. The following is an analysis of the conjugation of the principal irregular verbs of the Latin tongue:—

Posse, *to be able.*

Velle, *to be willing.*

Nolle, *to be unwilling.*

Malle, *to be more willing.*

Edere, *to eat.*

Ferre, *to bear.*

Fieri, *to be made.*

Ferri, *to be carried.*

*Note.*—*Malle* is compounded of *magis*, more, and *velle*, to be willing; and *edere* in some parts is conjugated like *esse*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

SING.			PLUR.		
Possum	potes	potest	possumus	potéstis	possunt
Volo	vis	vult	volumus	vultis	volunt
Nolo	nonvis	nonvult	nolumus	nonvultis	nolunt
Malo	mavis	mavult	malumus	mavultis	malunt
Edo	edis, <i>v. es</i>	edit, <i>v. est</i>	edimus	editis, <i>v. estis</i>	edunt
Fero	fers	fert	ferimus	fertis	ferunt
Fio	fis	fit	firmus	fitis	fiunt
Feror	ferris, <i>v. ferre</i>	fertur	ferimur	ferimini	ferúntur

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

SING.			PLUR.		
Pot-eram	eras	erat	erámus	erátis	erant
Volé-bam	} bas	} bat	} bámus	} bátis	} bant
Nolé-bam					
Malé-bam					
Edé-bam					
Feré-bam					
Fié-bam	} báris, <i>v. báre</i>	} bátur	} bámur	} bamini	} bántur
Feré-bar					

## 3. Perfect Tense.

SING.			PLUR.			
Potu-i	} isti	} it	} imus	} ístis	} érun, <i>vel ére</i>	
Volu-i						
Nolu-i						
Malu-i						
Ed-i						
Tul-i						
Fact-us	sum	es	est	i sumus,	estis,	sunt, fuérunt,
	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>
Lat-us	fui	fuisti	fuit	fuimus,	fuístis	fuére

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

SING.			PLUR.			
Potu-eram	} eras	} erat	} erámus	} erátis	} erant	
Volu-eram						
Nolu-eram						
Malu-eram						
Ed-eram						
Tul-eram	} eram,	} eras,	} erat,	} i erámus,	} erátis,	} erant,
Fact-us						
	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>
Lat-us	fueram	-eras	-erat	fuerámus	fuerátis	fuerant



## 5. Future Tense.

	SING.			PLUR.	
Pot-ero	eris	erit	erimus	eritis	erunt
Vol-am	} es	} et	} émus	} étis	} ent
Nol-am					
Mal-am					
Ed-am					
Fer-am					
Fi-am	} éris, v. ére	} étur	} émur	} émini	} entur
Fer-ar					

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Possum, volo, and malo* have no imperative mood.

## Present Tense.

	SING.		PLUR.
Noli, nolito.	_____	_____	nolíte, nolitóte. _____
Ede, edito, <i>vel</i> es, esto; edat, edito, <i>vel</i> esto			edámus; edite, editóte <i>vel</i> este, estóte; ed-ant, -unto
Fer, ferto; ferat, ferto			ferámus; ferte, fertóte; fer-ant, -unto
Fi, fito; fiat, fito			fiámus; fite, fitóte; fiant, fiunto
Fer-re, tor; ferátur, fertor			ferámur; ferimin-i, -or; -antur, -untor

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## 1. Present Tense.

	SING.			PLUR.	
Poss-im	} is	} it	} ímus	} ítis	} int
Vel-im					
Nol-im					
Mal-im					
Ed-am	} as	} at	} ámus	} átis	} ant
Fer-am					
Fi-am					
Fer-ar					

## 2. Imperfect Tense.

	SING.			PLUR.	
Poss-em	} es	} et	} émus	} étis	} ent
Vell-em					
Noll-em					
Mall-em					
Eder-em					
<i>vel</i> Ess-em	} éris, v. ére	} étur	} émur	} émini	} entur
Ferr-em					
Fier-em					
Ferr-er					



## 3. Perfect Tense.

SING.			PLUR.			
Potu-erim	}	eris	erit	erimus	eritis	erint
Volu-erim						
Nolu-erim						
Malu-erim						
Ed-erim						
Tul-erim						
Fact-us	sim,	sis,	sit,	i simus,	sitis,	sint,
	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>
Lat-us	fue-rim	ris	rit	fuerimus	fueritis	fuerint

## 4. Pluperfect Tense.

SING.			PLUR.			
Potu-issem	}	isses	isset	issémus	issétis	issent
Volu-issem						
Nolu-issem						
Malu-issem						
Ed-issem						
Tul-issem						
Fact-us	essem,	esses,	esset,	i essémus,	essétis,	essent,
	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>
Lat-us	fu-issem	isses	isset	fuissémus	fuissétis	fuissent

## 5. Future Tense.

SING.			PLUR.			
Potu-ero	}	eris	erit	erimus	eritis	erint
Volu-ero						
Nolu-ero						
Malu-ero						
Ed-ero						
Tul-ero						
Fact-us	ero,	eris,	erit,	erimus,	eritis,	erunt,
	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>
Lat-us	fue-ro	ris	rit	fuerimus	fueritis	fuerint

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present, and Imperfect Tense.

posse	edere, <i>vel</i> esse
velle	ferre
nolle	fieri
malle,	ferri

## Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

potuisse	edisse
voluisse	tulisse
noluisse	factum esse, <i>vel</i> fuisse
maluisse	latum esse, <i>vel</i> fuisse

## Future Tense.

esúrum esse	factum iri
latúrum esse	latum iri

*Possum, volo, nolo, malo*, have no future tense of the infinitive mood.

*Ire*, to go, is irregular in some of its parts; in others it is formed regularly.

The radical parts of this verb are—present indicative, *eo*; perfect indicative, *ivi*; supine, *itum*.

Of this verb, those parts which are formed from the perfect indicative and first supine are regular. The irregular formations are as follow:—

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SING.				PLUR.		
<i>Present.</i>	eo	is	it		imus	itis	eunt
<i>Imperf.</i>	ibam	ibas	ibat		ibamus	ibatis	ibant
<i>Future.</i>	ibo	ibis	ibit		ibimus	ibitis	ibunt

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

i, ito	eat, ito		eamus	ite, itote	eant, eunto
--------	----------	--	-------	------------	-------------

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	eam	eas	eat		eamus	eatis	eant
<i>Imperf.</i>	irem	ires	iret		iremus	iretis	irent

## GERUNDS.

eundi	eundo	eundum
-------	-------	--------

PARTICIPLE, *iens* (gen. *euntis*).

*Note.*—The compounds of *eo* are similarly conjugated; also *queo*, to be able, and *nequeo*, to be unable, except that the two latter have no imperative mood and no gerunds.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *defective*, that have only some particular tenses and persons: as,

*Aio, I say.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	aio	ais	ait		_____	_____	aiunt
<i>Imperf.</i>	aiébam	aiébas	aiébat		aiebámus	aiebátis	aiébant
<i>Perfect.</i>	_____	aisti	_____		_____	aistis	_____

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

_____	ai	_____		_____	_____
-------	----	-------	--	-------	-------

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

	SING.				PLUR.	
<i>Present.</i>		aias aiat		aiamus		aiant
		PARTICIPLE, aiens.				

Ausim, *I dare.*

## INDICATIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	ausim	ausis	ausit					
								ausint

*Ave, hail.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	ave, aveto			avête, avetôte	
--	------------	--	--	----------------	--

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

avére.

*Salve! God save you!*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Future.</i>		salvébis					
----------------	--	----------	--	--	--	--	--

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	salve, salvéto			salvéte, salvetôte	
--	----------------	--	--	--------------------	--

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

salvére.

*Cedo, give me.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	cedo			cedite	
--	------	--	--	--------	--

*Faxo, or faxim (for faciam), I will, or may do it.*

## INDICATIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

<i>Future.</i>	<i>{ faxo, vel }</i>	faxis	faxit		faximus	faxitis	faxint
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>{ faxim }</i>						

*Quæso, I pray.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	quæso	quæsis	quæsit		quæsumus		
-----------------	-------	--------	--------	--	----------	--	--

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

quæsere.

PARTICIPLE, quæsens.

Inquio, or inquam, *I say.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

		SING.			PLUR.
		<i>Present.</i>			
inquio, vel inquam	}	inquis	inquit	inquimus	inquunt
		<i>Imperfect.</i>			
_____	_____	inquiébat	_____	_____	inquiébant
		<i>Perfect.</i>			
_____		inquisti	_____	_____	_____
		<i>Future.</i>			
_____		inquies	inquiet	_____	_____

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

_____	inque	inquiat, inquito		_____	_____	_____
-------	-------	------------------	--	-------	-------	-------

PARTICIPLE, inquiens.

Memini, *I remember.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

_____	memento	_____		_____	mementôte	_____
-------	---------	-------	--	-------	-----------	-------

Cœpi, *I begin.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Perfect.</i>	cœpi	cœpisti	_____		_____	_____	_____
-----------------	------	---------	-------	--	-------	-------	-------

Odi, *I hate.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Perfect.</i>	odi	odisti	odit		_____	_____	oderunt
-----------------	-----	--------	------	--	-------	-------	---------

*Memini*, remember. This verb has the tenses only that are formed from the perfect tense of the indicative mood: as from it are formed *memin-eram*, *-erim*, *-issem*, *-ero*, *-isse*.

In like manner *cœpi* and *odi* also form these tenses.

THE ADVERB.

The adverb modifies the force of the word with which it is connected in Latin, as in English: as, *magnopere cupio discere*, I am very anxious to learn; wherein *magnopere* modifies the signification of the word *cupio*.

*Note.*—Some adverbs in Latin admit of comparison: thus, *bene*, well; comparative, *melius*, better; *optime*, best. The comparative of the adverb, in such cases, is the comparative neuter of the adjective agreeing with a noun understood, which is governed by some preposition also understood.

## THE PREPOSITION.

The preposition connects words: as, *exivit ex urbe*, he departed from the city; wherein *ex* is the preposition, and connects *ille*, the subject of *exivit*, or *exivit* itself, with *urbe*.

Prepositions require after them a noun, or its representative, the pronoun.

Such noun or pronoun, except the preposition be in composition, that is, form a part of another word, will always be in either the accusative or ablative case.

Some prepositions govern the accusative, and others the ablative case, and some govern both cases; but a preposition governing different cases varies its signification according to the case it governs.

The following are the principal prepositions which govern the ablative case:—*A*, *ab*, *abs*, *absque*, *coram*, *clam*, *cum*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *præ*, *pro*, *sine*, *tenus*.

The following are the principal prepositions which govern the accusative:—*Ad*, *adversus*, *adversum*, *ante*, *apud*, *circa*, *circum*, *circiter*, *cis*, *citra*, *contra*, *erga*, *extra*, *infra*, *inter*, *intra*, *juxta*, *penes*, *per*, *pone*, *post*, *præter*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, *supra*, *trans*, *ultra*, *usque*, *versus*.

*In*, *sub*, *subter*, and *super* are the principal prepositions which, varying their significations, govern the accusative and ablative.

## THE CONJUNCTION.

The conjunction is a particle which unites words or clauses together; when clauses, the preceding one is modified by the latter in some particular of time, place, manner, &c. &c.: as, *eram miser, cum amarem*, I was wretched when I loved; wherein the *cum* connects the latter with the former clause, the state expressed therein being asserted only of the time in which the act took place expressed in the latter clause.

## THE INTERJECTION.

Any word or particle which is used to express a sudden feeling of passion or emotion is called by the name interjection: thus, *ah!* *oh!*

In the Latin, as in the English language, nouns, adjectives, and verbs are frequently used interjectionally: as, *nefas!* *miserabile!* &c. &c.



*Definitions and Explanations of Terms used in the following  
Treatise.*

1. Translation is the rendering of the words of one language into words in another, so as thereby to express the same idea.

2. The construction of a language (generally) is the putting together (literally piling or building up) its words agreeably to the observed usage thereof. The construction of a particular word is the formula it requires to be used in connexion with it: as, *dare librum magistro*, to give a book to the master; from which it appears that the verb *dare* is constructed with an accusative of the thing given, and a dative of the person or thing which receives it.

3. A transitive verb (*transeo*, to pass over) is a verb that expresses an act which passes on to or affects an object: thus, *condere lunam*, to hide the moon; wherein *lunam* is the object or the thing affected by the act of *hiding*. The ear always detects the transitive verb, which leaves a vacuum after it, the sense not being concluded until such vacuum is filled up.

4. The subject of a sentence is the word which is the subject of conversation, that is, the word of which the verb makes the affirmation. This subject is in the nominative case: thus the subject of a verb and its nominative case are identical.

5. The agent is the word which expresses the performer of an act. In an active verb the subject or nominative case and the agent are identical: thus, "I sleep;" where *I* is the subject or nominative of the verb *sleep*, and also the agent or performer of the act of sleeping. In the passive verb, on the contrary, the agent and subject are not identical: as, "The house is burned by fire;" where *house* is the subject, and *fire* the agent.

6. The complement of a word (*compleo*, to fill up) is the word or formula of words connected with or appended to it for the purpose of explanation: thus, "The Queen of England, England's Queen;" wherein *of England* in the former, and *England's* in the latter expression, is the complement of *Queen*.

7. A deponent verb (*deponere*, to lay down) is a verb which, though passive in inflexion, *lays down*, that is, gives up, the passive signification, and is active in sense.

8. A simple sentence has in it but one subject *and* one verb. Attention is directed in this definition to the force of *and*, because a sentence having one subject and two verbs, or two subjects and one verb, is not simple, being resolvable into as many simple sentences as there are either subjects or verbs.

A complex sentence is one which may be resolved into two or more simple sentences.

9. A word is said to be syncopated when a letter or syllable is elided from the middle thereof. The mark (^) is generally set over the part where the want exists: as, *quíerant*, for *quieverant*.

10. The context of a word or passage is the sentence or sentences which stand connected with it. The context is frequently the best commentary as to the meaning of a doubtful word or passage.

11. The influence which one word exercises over another is properly called *government*, inasmuch as the governed word assumes a definite form, in obedience, as it were, to the word by which such influence is exerted: thus, in the expression *Britanniæ Regina*, the former word explaining the latter is said to be governed by it in the genitive case, according to the principle laid down in Rule 5.

12. Words are said to be disjunctively connected when they are united in the same link by a copula, which shows that the thing asserted is said of one to the exclusion of the other; and copulatively connected when the assertion is made equally of all.

13. The antecedent is the word for which the relative stands, and is sometimes called the *correlative*.

14. A periphrasis is a form of expression whereby an idea is represented by many words which could be expressed directly by few: thus, "From the rising to the setting of the sun," *i. e.* from east to west.

15. Attraction is a species of construction which exhibits itself in various forms, the principal of which is that wherein the relative is put in (attracted to) the case of the antecedent, irrespectively of the position of the relative in its own clause.

16. Hendiadis is a figure of speech whereby what is really but one is represented as two things: thus, *gemmis auroque*, with gems and gold, *i. e.* with golden gems.

17. Synecdoche is a figure of speech whereby a part is put for the whole.

## LATIN CONSTRUCTION AND TRANSLATION.

### *Rules.*

1. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.
2. The adjective agrees with the noun which it qualifies in gender, number, and case.

3. Transitive verbs govern an accusative case.

4. Some prepositions require the noun after them to be in the accusative, and some in the ablative case.

5. One noun governs another which explains or modifies it in the genitive case.

6. The word which expresses the instrument *with* which, the cause *for* which, or the manner *in* which an act is performed, is put in the ablative case.

*Note.*—The first rule means that the subject and the verb must be in the same number and person; the second that the adjective and the noun must be in the same gender, number, and case; and the third rule states a general principle to which there are many exceptions, which will be considered hereafter. The number of the rule will be appended in the following sentences to the word to which, as illustrating it, attention is directed.

*Sentences.*

1. Scipio <sup>1</sup> fudit <sup>5</sup> Annibalis <sup>3</sup> copias.
2. <sup>5</sup> Lethi vis <sup>1</sup> rapuit, <sup>1</sup> rapietque <sup>3</sup> gentes.
3. <sup>2</sup> Cita mors <sup>1</sup> venit, aut victoria <sup>2</sup> læta.
4. Orpheus <sup>6</sup> carmine <sup>3</sup> sylvas et <sup>3</sup> saxa <sup>1</sup> duxit.
5. <sup>6</sup> Concordia <sup>2</sup> parvæ res <sup>1</sup> crescunt, <sup>6</sup> discordia <sup>2</sup> maximæ <sup>1</sup> dilabuntur.
6. <sup>6</sup> Dente <sup>2</sup> tenaci anchora <sup>1</sup> fundabat <sup>3</sup> naves.
7. Neptunus <sup>6</sup> ventis <sup>1</sup> implevit <sup>3</sup> vela <sup>2</sup> secundis.
8. Extemplo <sup>5</sup> Libyæ <sup>2</sup> magnas <sup>1</sup> it fama per <sup>4</sup> urbes.
9. Homines <sup>2</sup> proniores <sup>1</sup> sunt ad <sup>4</sup> voluptatem, quam ad <sup>4</sup> virtutem.
10. <sup>2</sup> Pallida mors <sup>2</sup> æquo <sup>1</sup> pulsat <sup>6</sup> pede <sup>5</sup> pauperum <sup>3</sup> tabernas, <sup>5</sup> regumque <sup>3</sup> turres.
11. Nox <sup>1</sup> erat, et <sup>2</sup> placidum <sup>1</sup> carpebant <sup>2</sup> fessa <sup>3</sup> soporem corpora per <sup>4</sup> terras, silvæque et <sup>2</sup> sæva <sup>1</sup> quierant æquora.
12. Navita de <sup>4</sup> ventis, de <sup>4</sup> tauris <sup>1</sup> narrat arator.
13. <sup>1</sup> Cantabit <sup>2</sup> vacuus coram <sup>4</sup> latrone viator.
14. <sup>2</sup> Tres Eurus ab <sup>4</sup> alto in <sup>4</sup> brevia et <sup>4</sup> syrtes <sup>1</sup> urget.

INSTRUCTIONS.

*Sentences.*

1. The first thing to be done in translating a sentence is to look out for all the words thereof in the index or dictionary.

The parts of speech to which each belongs, and the case, number, &c. &c. of a noun or pronoun, with the conjugation, number, person, mood, and tense of the verb, can be thus acquired. This done, the subject of the sentence and the verb are next to be found out, and then the other words must follow in translation as the construction or sense, or both together, will dictate. In the case of the present sentence, there are three nouns, one only of which, *Scipio*, is in the nominative case. This, therefore, may at once be concluded to be the subject of the only verb in the sentence, *fudit*, which will be found from its inflexion to be in the indicative mood, perfect tense, third person singular. The translation in English of these two words is, therefore, "Scipio has routed (or routed)." This is evidently a transitive verb, as indicated by the ear, because a man cannot rout without routing something. The next thing is to find out that something. The only noun in the sentence which can express the something routed is *copias*, because it is the only one in the accusative case, and by Rule 3 transitive verbs govern the accusative. The sentence thus far is in English, "Scipio routed (the) forces;" and the remaining word, *Annibalis*, being in the genitive case, belongs to *copias* in construction, and so in translation, by Rule 5; and the whole sentence, therefore, when rendered into English, is, "Scipio routed the forces of Annibal." In addition to this, the particulars of the declension of each word inflected are to be ascertained; and as far as the sentence in question is concerned, all is known concerning it which can be exacted from the learner.

2. The subject, according to the principles enunciated under Sentence 1, is *vis*. The complement of *vis* is *lethi*, because *lethi* can be joined as the genitive complement to no other noun in the sentence so as to make sense. The verb is *rapuit*, which is connected with *rapiet* by the conjunction *que*. The object of these transitive verbs evidently is *gentes*, and the sentence translated is, "The force of death has carried off, and will carry off nations."

3. Herein are merely involved, in addition to the preceding principles, the concord or agreement between the noun and the adjective, which is laid down in Rule 2. *Mors* is the noun, *citus* the adjective. On looking to the index, *citus* is perceived to be an adjective of three terminations, like *bonus*. *Mors* is the nominative case, singular number, feminine gender; and *citus* declined will be found in these three parts to be *cita*: hence *cita*, not any other part of the adjective, is properly used to qualify *mors*. The same principle regulates *læta*, which qualifies *victoria*, which latter is the subject of the verb *venit* as well as



*mors*. The sentence translated therefore is, "Quick death comes, or joyful victory."

*Note*.—An adjective in Latin, as in English, sometimes qualifies a noun in the place of the adverb of that adjective qualifying the verb: thus the above sentence is equivalent to "Death comes quickly."

4. *Orpheus* is evidently the subject (Rule 1), because the verb is singular; and though *saxa* may be elsewhere the nominative, yet, because it is plural, it cannot be the nominative to *duxit* in the singular. *Sylvas* and *saxa* are in the same yoke or link, as connected by the copulative *que*; and *carmine*, as the ablative, expresses the instrument (Rule 6). Thus the sentence translated will be, "Orpheus led (after him) the woods and rocks by his verse," *i. e.* by the power of his song.

5. In the first clause there is a subject, which cannot be *concordia*, the verb being plural, and *concordia* singular (Rule 1): hence it must be *res*. This is qualified by *parvæ*, and *concordia*, in the ablative, expresses the instrument, as does *discordia* in the next clause, of which *res* understood is the subject, qualified by *maximæ* (see Comparison of Irregular Adjectives). *Dilabuntur* is a deponent verb, and to be translated as if it were active. The sentence, therefore, stands thus when translated: "Small things increase by concord, the greatest dwindle away by discord."

6. The instructions already given are quite sufficient to enable the learner to translate this sentence: "The anchor moored the ships with its fast-holding fluke."

*Note*.—*Tenax* means *tenacious*, *i. e.* fast-holding, and *dens*, which literally means *a tooth*, *i. e.* any thing which bites or holds in its gripe, is translated *fluke*, the name of that part of the anchor which catches the bottom and holds fast. Care must be taken to render one language by such words in another as will most neatly and correctly express the sense.

7. The subject is at once seen to be *Neptunus*. The verb *implevit* is transitive in signification, and must govern *vela*, not *ventis*, as the object; the latter is the instrument, and is qualified by *secundis*. The sentence, therefore, translated means, "Neptune filled the sails with favourable blasts."

*Note*.—The adjective, in Latin, does not *immediately* precede or succeed the qualified word, as it does in the English language.

8. *Fama*, tried by the preceding principles, is the only subject; *it*, the verb. *Extemplo*, an adverb, qualifies this verb. *Per*, a preposition, cannot govern *Libyæ* in the genitive (Rule 4); therefore it must govern *urbes*, which is qualified by *magnas*, and which has *Libyæ* as its genitive complement (Rule 5). This



sentence, therefore, is thus translated: "A report goes (is spread) immediately through the great cities of Africa."

9. *Proniores*, from the positive *pronus*, declined like *bonus*, is the comparative degree (see Comparison of Adjectives), and qualifies *homines*. This sentence, rendered into English, is, "Men are more prone to pleasure than (they are) to virtue."

10. *Mors* is evidently the subject, and *pallida* can agree with no other word in the sentence. *Pulsat* is a transitive verb, and has for its object (see Definition 3) *tabernas* and *turres*, connected by *que*, the genitive complement of *tabernas* being *pauperum*, and of *turres*, *regum*. The translation is, "Pale death knocks at the huts of the poor and the towers of kings with an equal (impartial) foot." *Pede* expresses the manner or instrument (Rule 6).

11. This is a complex sentence, and has in it three simple ones. *Nox erat*, night was, *i. e.* it was night; *et* connecting this with the succeeding sentence, the verb of which is plural, and the only subject in which is *corpora*, qualified by *fessa*. The verb is transitive, and requires an object, which is found in *soporem*, qualified by *placidum*. The next sentence has two subjects, *silvæ* and *æquora*, the latter qualified by *sæva*; and the verb *quïerant* is syncopated for *quieverant*. The English is, "It was night, and wearied bodies were enjoying peaceful sleep throughout the earth (or world), and the woods and boisterous seas had become quiet (had been hushed in silence)."

12. Nothing is required to be said here but that the verb *narrat* is understood in the first clause to the subject *navita*, and that the preposition *de* signifies *of*, in the sense of *concerning* or *about*.

13. Nothing is required to be said as to the construction of this sentence, the meaning of which is, that a traveller having nothing to lose is not afraid to attract the attention of robbers.

14. The subject of *urget* evidently is *Eurus*; and the line itself shows, apart from its context, that *tres* (three) must have some noun, as *naves* (ships), agreeing with it understood. *In* in this sentence signifies *into*, and governs the accusative, which is *brevia* and *syrtes*, connected by *et*. The English is, "The east wind drives three (ships) into shoals and quicksands."

#### *Questions on the Analysis of the foregoing Sentences.*

1. What tense and mood is *fudit*? What number, and why? What conjugation, and how known? Give its radical parts. Why is *copias* in the accusative, and *Annibalis* in the genitive?

2. Decline *vis*. What is its complement? What is the object of *rapuit*, and what of *rapiet*?

3. Show that *citæ mors* would violate some grammatical principle.

4. Why is *carmine* in the ablative? Decline it.

5. Show that *parvæ* and *maximæ* are not the genitives singular. Give the radical parts of *crescunt*, its mood and tense. What kind of verb is *dilabuntur*? Explain this name as applied to a verb.

6. Decline *tenax*.

7. What case is *ventis*, and why? What conjugation is *implevit*? Give its principal parts.

8. What word is *Libyæ* the complement of? Compare *magnas*.

9. Compare *proniore*s. What does it qualify?

10. Show that *pallida* does not qualify *pede*. What is *pau-perum* governed by? *Regum*? Why is *pede* in the ablative?

11. Would *placidam* be good Latin? What is the subject of *carpebant*? Decline it. Give the principal parts of *carpebant*. Decline *æquora*.

13. Why is *latrone* in the ablative case? What are the principal parts of *cantabit*?

14. Decline *brevia*. What does *tres* agree with? What does *in* signify here? What nouns are governed by *in*? What case is *alto*? Decline it. Give the principal parts of *urget*. What conjugation is it? How known? What does *et* connect?

#### *Observations on the foregoing Rules.*

##### *Rule 1.*

1. Plurality of idea in the subject constitutes the necessity of the plural construction of the verb. The subject is plural when it consists of one or more plural nouns, or two or more singular nouns copulatively connected; it is also plural when it consists of a noun in the singular conveying plurality of idea, (generally called a noun of multitude,) or of a single noun associated with a formula of words, of some of which, though not in the nominative case, the verb affirms.

2. The infinitive mood, or part, or the whole of a sentence, supplies the place of a nominative.

3. Two singular nouns disjunctively connected have a verb singular. When two nouns, one singular, the other plural, are disjunctively connected, it is manifest that, though the verb affirms of both, it can agree in number only with one; this one is usually that next to the verb. It may also be the other without any violation of philosophical grammar.

4. When two or more nominatives of different persons are copulatively connected, the verb in the plural will agree in person

with the first rather than the second, and with the second rather than with the third.

*Rule 2.*

5. If there be several nouns of different genders qualified by one adjective, it cannot agree in gender with them all. It is made in such case to agree with the masculine rather than the feminine, and with the feminine rather than the neuter.

*Rule 3.*

6. To this the construction of many verbs exhibits an exception: *misereror* and *miserescor* govern the genitive, *potior* and *utor* govern the genitive or ablative. Verbs expressing profit or hurt to any one (except *lædo*, *juvo*, *adjuvo*, *offendo*, and *delecto*), verbs of commanding and obeying, or resistance, verbs of trusting, those which express threats and anger, and many verbs compounded with *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, *præ*, *super*, *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative case.

*Rule 4.*

7. The preposition *tenuis*, if the noun after it be plural, is usually followed by a genitive case.

*Rule 5.*

8. The genitive complement must express something different from that which governs it.

9. This genitive is frequently changed into the dative.

10. Nouns which are names for the same thing are put in the same case: this is usually called *apposition* by grammarians.

11. Should the latter of two nouns (one being the complement of the other) have an adjective of praise or dispraise, or, in fact, any qualification joined with it, such noun is more usually expressed in the ablative than the genitive.

12. *Opus* and *usus*, when they signify *need*, are followed by the ablative.

*Note.*—In the following sentences the foregoing observations will be illustrated, and the figure over each word will refer to the number of the observation thereby illustrated.

1. Eo modo inter se duo imperatores, summi <sup>10</sup> viri, <sup>1</sup> certabant.

2. Vestibulum ante ipsum, primisque in faucibus Orci,  
Luctus et ultrices <sup>1</sup> posuere cubilia curæ;  
Pallentesque habitant morbi, tristisque senectus,  
Et metus, et malesuada fames, et turpis egestas,  
Terribiles visu <sup>10</sup> formæ, letumque, laborque.

3. Plotius, et Varius, Virgiliusque <sup>1</sup> occurrunt.
4. Verum ubi, pro labore, desidia, pro continentia et æquitate, lubido atque superbia <sup>1</sup> invasere, fortuna simul cum moribus immutatur.
5. Pars ingentem formidine turpi <sup>1</sup> scandunt rursus equum, et nota <sup>1</sup> conduntur in alvo.
6. Pars calidos latices et athena undantia flammis <sup>1</sup> expediunt.
7. At Lentulus cum ceteris <sup>1</sup> constituerant uti Lucius Bestia, <sup>10</sup> tribunus plebis, quereretur de actionibus Ciceronis, bellique gravissimi invidiam optimo consuli imponeret.
8. Ipse dux cum aliquot principibus <sup>1</sup> capiuntur.
9. Bocchus cum peditibus postremam Romanam aciem <sup>1</sup> invadunt.
10. Dulce et decorum est <sup>2</sup> *pro patria mori*.
11. <sup>2</sup> *Prodere patriam* est peccatum.
12. Suave est <sup>2</sup> *ex magno tollere acervo*.
13. <sup>2</sup> *Dicere de se ipso* est senile.
14. Horæ momento cita mors <sup>3</sup> venit, aut victoria læta.
15. Aut Brutus, aut Triumviri victores <sup>3</sup> erunt.
16. Aut Triumviri, aut Brutus victor <sup>3</sup> erit.
17. Et ego et amicus <sup>4</sup> eram consules.
18. Tu et Valerius <sup>4</sup> eritis consules.
19. Multi filii et filiæ <sup>5</sup> impositi sunt in rogam.
20. Arcadii, quæso, miserescite <sup>6</sup> regis, et patrias audite preces.
21. Si bene quid de te merui, miserere <sup>6</sup> domus labentis, et istam, oro, exue mentem.
22. Si vero <sup>2</sup> *capere Italiam*, <sup>6</sup> *sceptrisque* <sup>2</sup> *potiri* contigerit victori, et <sup>2</sup> *prædæ ducere sortem*.
23. Utere domo <sup>6</sup> mea pro tua.
24. Parvula formica, simul inversum contristat Aquarius annum, non usquam prorepat, et <sup>6</sup> illis utitur ante <sup>6</sup> quæsitis sapiens.
25. Quàm metui, ne Libyæ <sup>6</sup> tibi regna nocerent!
26. Quid tantùm <sup>6</sup> te insano juvat indulgere <sup>6</sup> dolori, on dulcis conjux!
27. Cave, <sup>6</sup> te ne frigora lædant.



28. Juvat <sup>6</sup> nos <sup>2</sup> ire, <sup>2</sup> et Dorica castra, desertosque videre locos, littusque relictum.

29. Quid juvat immensum <sup>6</sup> te <sup>8</sup> argenti pondus et <sup>8</sup> auri furtim defossa timidum deponere terra ?

30. Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia <sup>6</sup> cuique.

31. Ecce autem sæva <sup>8</sup> Jovis conjux sese referebat ab Argis, et lætum Æneam classemque ex æthere longè Dardaniam Siculo prospexit ab usque Pachyno. Moliri jam tecta videt, jam fidere <sup>6</sup> terræ.

32. Me ne salis placidi vultum fluctusque quietos Ignorare jubes ? Me ne huic confidere <sup>6</sup> monstro ?

33. Octavius non solebat temere irasci <sup>6</sup> amicis.

34. Nunquamne levare obsidione sines ? <sup>6</sup> muris iterum imminet hostis nascentis Trojæ ?

35. Non ego nunc dulci amplexu divellerer usquam, nate, tuo ; neque finitimus Mezentius unquam, huic <sup>6</sup> capiti insultans, tot ferro sæva dedisset funera.

36. Hic perpetuis soliti patres considerare <sup>6</sup> mensis.

37. Jamque ascendebant collem <sup>6</sup> urbi imminentem.

38. Rex, <sup>10</sup> genus egregium Fauni, nec fluctibus actos atra subegit hyems vestris succedere <sup>6</sup> terris, nec sidus regione viæ, littusve fefellit.

39. Priusquam dimicarent, foedus ictum inter Romanos et Albanos est his legibus, ut, cujusque populi cives eo certamine vicissent, is alteri <sup>6</sup> populo cum bona pace imperitaret.

40. Male <sup>9</sup> sustinenti arma gladium superne jugulo defigit, jacentemque spoliat.

41. Movet feroci <sup>9</sup> juveni animum comploratio sororis, in victoria sua tantoque gaudio publico.

42. Atrox visum id facinus Patribus plebique : sed recens meritum <sup>6</sup> facto obstabat.

43. Sunt mihi bis septem præstanti <sup>11</sup> corpore nymphæ.

44. Deiopeiam connubio jungam stabili, propriamque dicabo, omnes ut te cum meritis pro talibus annos exigat et pulchra faciat te <sup>11</sup> prole parentem.

45. Homines infima <sup>11</sup> fortuna historia delectantur.

46. Fronte sub adversa <sup>11</sup> scopulis pendentibus antrum.  
Intus aquæ dulces, vivoque sedilia <sup>11</sup> saxo,  
Nympharum <sup>10</sup> domus.



47. <sup>12</sup> Auctoritate tua nobis opus est.

48. Ubi testimonia rerum adsunt, quid opus est <sup>12</sup> verbis ?

49. Tantummodo <sup>12</sup> incepto opus est ; cetera res expedit.

50. Curius, ubi intellexit quantum periculum <sup>6</sup> consuli impendeat, prope per Fulviam dolum paratum enunciat.

*Notes on the foregoing Sentences.*

1. *Eo modo*—in this manner. Nouns are frequently governed by prepositions understood ; *modo* is governed by *in*, or it may be regarded as the ablative expressing the manner. See Rule 6.

*Duo—summi*. For the declension of *duo*, see the Declension of Adjectives ; and for the comparison of *summi*, the Comparison of Irregular Adjectives.

2. *Luctus, curæ*. The combined subject of *posuere*.

*Cubilia*. The object of this verb : nominative singular, neuter, *cubile*, genitive *cubilis*. See Note under Third Declension.

4. *Desidia*. This is the subject of *invasit*, understood out of *invasere*, the subject expressed of which are *lubido* and *superbia*. The English translation is, "But when instead of labour, idleness (entered), instead of temperance and a sense of justice, passion and tyrannical insolence entered, their (the Romans') good fortune together with their morals became changed." *Immutatur*, literally, *is changed*. This verb is in the present tense, which is very frequently used by historical writers for the past or imperfect.

5. *Formidine turpi*. This is the cause (Rule 6), and governed by *scandunt* ; in English, "A part scale the horse through (by reason of) base fear."

6. *Flammis*. The ablative of the means or instrument (Rule 6). It is governed by *undantia*, which agrees with *ahena* ; in English, "The caldrons boiling over by the flames." It should be mentioned that participles govern the same cases as the verbs of which they are parts ; and that adjectives generally in Latin, as in English, are to be taken separately as it were from their nouns, when the adjective has connected with it an expression of limitation : thus we say, "The heated earth ;" but "The earth heated by the rays of the sun ;" where "The rays of the sun" express a limitation of *heated* ; and show the means by which, to the exclusion of all others, the heating took place.

7. *At Lentulus*—but Lentulus with (and) others had determined that Lucius Bestia, a tribune of the people, should prefer a charge concerning the acts of Cicero, and lay the odium of this most troublesome outbreak on the best consul (the best of consuls). The pluperfect expresses an act prior to some other act

expressed or implied. This other act cannot be gathered here, as the context is wanted.

9. *Postremam*—the rear rank of the Romans, the Roman last line of men. *Acies*—a body of men in battle array. *Agmen*—a body in line of march; and *exercitus*—a body in a state of training or military exercise.

10. *Dulce et decorum*. The subject of this sentence is *pro patri mori*, which serves as a noun qualified by these adjectives. The adjective so placed is always in the neuter gender.

13. "To speak of one's self is senile," *i. e.* the property of old age.

14. *Momento*, see Note 1. *Victoria* is the subject of *venit*.

21. "If I have deserved well from you (at your hands) pity your falling house, and, I beseech you, give up this intention." The object of a verb is frequently understood: thus *oro* requires *te*.

22. *Et prædæ ducere sortem*—and to cast lots for the plunder.

23. "Use my house for (as) your own (house)."

24. "The little ant, as soon as Aquarius saddens the inverted year, never creeps abroad any where; but wise (the ant wisely) uses those things before acquired." "As soon as Aquarius makes sad," *i. e.* as soon as winter arrives.

*Sapiens*. In Latin, as in English, an adjective agreeing with the noun is sometimes equivalent to an adverb qualifying the verb: thus in the text, "A wise ant uses," = "An ant wisely uses."

*Quæsitis*. Agreeing as a participial adjective with *rebus* understood. The participle or adjective is frequently placed alone, the noun being expressed or implied in the context.

29. "Why does it delight you timid (filled with anxiety) to deposit in the ground, secretly excavated, an immense weight of silver and gold?"

31. *Referebat sese*—was bringing herself back, *i. e.* was returning.

*Et lætum*—and beheld, far off from the sky, joyful Æneas and the Trojan fleet even as far as from the Sicilian Pachynus, she sees them now to build (building) houses, now to trust (put confidence in) the land.

32. *Me ne*. *Ne*—whether, an interrogative particle; this particle need not be translated. "Whether do you order me?" *i. e.* Do you order me? "Do you bid me be unacquainted with?" *i. e.* Do you think I am unacquainted with?

*Confidere monstro*—do you bid me put confidence in this monster? *i. e.* the sea; the meaning is, "I will not put confidence in it."

34. *Nunquam*—will you never permit us to be relieved from this blockade? Will an enemy once again hang over the walls of rising Troy? *i. e.* Troy once again being built.

35. "I would not now be ever separated from your sweet embrace, my son. Nor would the neighbouring Mezentius, insulting this person of mine, have ever exhibited so many cruel deeds of slaughter with the sword."

36. *Soliti*. It will have been observed that certain portions of the passive verb are made up of the past participle of the verb itself, and some portion of the verb *esse*. This portion of *esse* is determined by the part of the verb required; the participle in such case is declined like an adjective of three terminations and agrees with the subject, like an adjective, in gender, number, and case. It is to be remarked, moreover, that the portion of *esse* required is frequently understood: thus, in the present instance, *sunt* is understood, to agree with *patres* in number and person.

38. "O king, illustrious descendant of Faunus, neither has the dark storm forced us, driven by the waves, to enter your territories, nor has a star or shore deceived us in (drawn us out of) the track of our way."

39. "Before they engaged, a league was struck up between the Romans and Albans on the following conditions—that of whatever state the subjects should conquer in that conflict, that should rule over the other state in good (firm or honourable) peace." This is the literal translation; the Latin text is according to a form of expression which cannot be explained at this stage.

40. "He buries from above (by striking down) his sword in the throat of him (*ei*) badly (scarcely) supporting (able to support) his arms." In Latin every word is not expressed, as it is in English; pronouns are frequently understood, as here; so are the Latin equivalents for *man* and *thing*, of which more will be said hereafter.

42. *Visum*. *Est* is understood. See latter part of Note 36.

43. "Seven nymphs are to me," *i. e.* I have seven nymphs. The verb *esse* is frequently used for *habere*, the construction, of which more hereafter, being different.

44. *Propriamque dicabo*—and will assign (her to you as) your own.

46. *Antrum*—there is a cave. The subject of *est* understood. *Aquæ*, subject of *sunt*; as also *sedilia*. *Vivo saxo*—seats of living (natural) stone.

47. "There is need to us," &c. &c., *i. e.* we have need. See Note 43.



49. "There is need only of a beginning, every thing else will expedite itself," *i. e.* push itself on after once set going.

50. *Per Fulviam*—through the agency of Fulvia. *Per* with an accusative after it denotes agency in such accusative, and is thus equivalent to the ablative of the instrument.

*Questions on the foregoing Sentences.*

1. Decline *duo* and *se*. Account for the case of *modo*.
2. What is the subject of this sentence? Decline *cubilia*. *Morbi* is the subject of *habitant*; express the verbs with each of the remaining subjects. Decline *metus* and *senectus*.
4. Decline *æquitate*. Why is *invasere* plural? What part of the verb is it? Give its principal parts. Decline *moribus*.
5. What case is *formidine* in, and why? What part of the verb is *conduntur*?
6. What word in this line shows the gender of *latices*? Why?
7. What may be regarded as the subject of *constituerant*? When is the pluperfect used? What part of the adjective is *gravissimi*? How found?
9. Decline *peditibus*. The radical parts of *invadunt*?
10. Why are *dulce* and *decorum* neuter?
14. What case is *momento* in, and by what governed?
17. Why is *eramus* plural? Why in the first person?
18. Account in the same way for the number and person of *eritis*.
19. The subject of *impositi sunt*? What part of the verb? Why is *impositi* in the masculine gender? State generally the principle involved here.
21. What case is *domus* in? Why? What rule is this an exception to?
22. The subject of *contigerit*? What part of the verb is it?
28. What is the subject of *juvat*? Decline *locos*.
29. According to the translation what does *furtim* qualify? *Timidum*? What does *defossa* agree with?
32. What is the exact use of *ne*? Decline *fluctus* and *monstro*, and account for the case of both.
33. Whether does *temere* qualify *solebat* or *irasci*?
35. Decline *funera*. What part of the verb is *divellerer*?
36. What part of the verb is *soliti*? What part of the verb is omitted? What case is *mensis*? Why?
38. Decline *genus*. What case is it in? Why? What is *fluctibus* governed by? What case is *terris* in? Why? Decline *sidus*, and give the radical parts of *fefellit*.
39. What part of the verb is *vicissent*? Give its radical parts. What case is *populo* in? Why?

40. What does *sustinenti* agree with? What principle is involved here? What does *jacentem* agree with?
42. What is understood with *visum*? What case is *facto* in, and why?
43. Why is *corpore* in the ablative? Also *prole*?
46. What is *aquæ* the subject of? Decline *sedilia*.

### Rules.

7. The infinitive mood takes before it an accusative instead of a nominative as a subject. This accusative is translated into English with the word *that* prefixed.

8. Any transitive may be changed into a passive verb. The following changes taking place necessarily in the construction of the sentence:—

1. The object of the transitive verb becomes the subject of the passive verb.

2. The subject of the transitive verb becomes the ablative of the agent. This ablative is introduced with or without *a* or *ab*, and is sometimes expressed in the dative.

3. The number and person of the passive verb are determined by those of its own subject.

9. *Esse* for *habere* requires a dative case. The following changes necessarily take place in the construction of the sentence:—

1. The object of *habere* becomes the subject of *esse*.

2. The subject of *habere* becomes the dative, the number remaining the same.

3. The number and person of *esse* are determined by those of its subject.

*Note.*—The mood and tense of the two verbs are always the same.

10. The comparative degree is followed by an ablative case, which is translated into English by the prefix *than*.

*Note.*—This ablative is equivalent to *quam*, *than*, and such case of the noun or pronoun following as the construction of the sentence would naturally require.

11. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.

*Note.*—Sometimes they agree in case, but this is not essential, and depends altogether on the construction of the sentence; that is, on the position which they both occupy therein.

12. The relative is the nominative to the verb when no nominative comes between them.

*Note.*—The case of the relative is in all instances the case



which the noun would be in for which the relative is a substitute. Also, when the relative is connected objectively with the verb, it precedes the verb in Latin, as in English.

13. The verbs *sum*, *fit*, *existo*, verbs passive of naming, and most passive and intransitive verbs, are followed by that case of the noun or pronoun which precedes it.

14. The ablative case is frequently used absolutely, that is, free from the government of any other word: in this case it frequently agrees with the past participle, the word *being* being understood between them. It most frequently expresses a state of being, and the cause of an expressed act.

15. The feminine noun *res*, a thing, is frequently omitted, and, in such case, the adjective is made neuter; also *homo*, a man, is omitted, and the adjective made masculine.

In the following sentences the *whole of the foregoing rules and observations* will be illustrated.

1. *Fœdere icto trigemini, arma capiunt.*

2. *Priusquam inde digrederentur, roganti Metto ex fœdere icto quid imperaret, imperat Tullus, uti juventutem in armis habeat; usurum se eorum opera, si bellum cum Vejentibus foret.*

3. *Ita exercitus inde domos abducti. Princeps Horatius ibat, trigemina spolia præ se gerens. Cui soror virgo, quæ desponsa uni ex Curiatiis fuerat, obvia ante portam Capenam fuit; cognitoque super humeros fratris paludamento sponsi, quod ipsa confecerat, solvit crines, et flebiliter nomine sponsum mortuum appellat.*

4. *Corripuere viam interea, qua semita monstrat.  
Jamque ascendebant collem, qui plurimus urbi  
Imminet, adversasque aspectat desuper arces.  
Miratur molem Æneas, magalia quondam:  
Miratur portas, strepitumque, et strata viarum,  
Instant ardentes Tyrii: pars ducere muros,  
Molirique arcem, et manibus subvolvere saxa:  
Pars aptare locum tecto et concludere sulco.*

5. *Improbus est, qui scit beneficium accipere, nescit reddere.*

6. *Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato.*

7. *In mundo Deus est, qui regit, qui gubernat, qui cursum astrorum, qui mutationes temporum, rerum vicissitudines, ordinesque conservat.*

8. Regius, accitu cari genitoris, ad urbem  
Sidoniam puer ire parat, mea maxima cura,  
Dona ferens pelago, et flammis restantia Trojæ.

9. Forte in duobus tum exercitibus erant trigemini fratres, nec  
ætate, nec viribus dispares, Horatios Curiatiosque fuisse satis  
constat.

10. Quibus rebus confectis, omnia propere per nuncios consuli  
declarantur,

In the following sentences the contrast will be exhibited be-  
tween the different constructions referred to in Rules 8, 9, 10.

*Rule 8.*

TRANSITIVE.	PASSIVE.
11. Oves lanam præbent.	Lana ab ovibus præbetur.
12. Scipio vicit Annibalem.	Annibal a Scipione victus est.
13. Ego cepi lætitiã ex epistola patris.	Lætitiã a me capta est ex epistola patris.
14. Pater ventorum regit navem.	Navis regitur patre ven- torum.
15. Fortia taurorum corpora frangit opus.	Fortia corpora taurorum ab opere franguntur.
16. Miles timet sagittam hostis.	Sagitta hostis a milite time- tur.
17. Sapientem neque pau- pertas, neque mors, neque vin- cula terrent.	Sapiens neque paupertate, neque morte, neque vinculis terretur.
18. Literas expecto quas promisisti.	Literæ a me expectantur, quas promisisti.

*Rule 9.*

HABERE.	ESSE.
19. Ego habeo septem nym- phas.	Septem nymphæ sunt mihi.
20. Regna Tyri habebat Pygmalion.	Regna Tyri erant Pygma- lioni.
21. Æternumque locus Pali- nuri nomen habebit.	Æternumque loco Palinuri nomen erit.
22. Primum regem Athe- nienses habuere Cecropem.	Primus rex Atheniensibus fuit Cecrops.

*Rule 10.*

## COMPARATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

23. Nihil est dulcius his literis, quibus cœlum, terras, maria cognoscimus.

24. Scientia nulla res est præstantior.

25. Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.

## COMPARATIVE AND QUAM.

Nihil est dulcius quam hæ literæ (sunt) quibus cœlum, terras, maria cognoscimus.

Nulla res est præstantior quam scientia (est).

Vilius argentum est quam aurum (est), aurum (est vilius) quam virtutes (sunt).

26. Non debemus quidquam agere, cujus non possimus causam reddere.

27. Pecuniam in loco negligere, maximum interdum est lucrum.

28. Cur me querelis exanimas tuis? Nec Dīs amicum est, nec mihi, te prius obire, Mæcenas, mearum grande decus columnæque rerum.

29. Scandit æratas vitiosa naves cura, nec turmas equitum relinquit, ocior cervis, et agente nimbos ocior Euro.

30. Nempe inter varias nutritur sylva columnas, laudaturque domus longos quæ prospicit agros.

31. Nil admirari prope res est una, solaque, quæ possit facere et servare beatum.

32. Quando pauperiem, missis ambagibus, horres, accipe, qua ratione queas ditescere. Turdus, sive aliud privum dabitur tibi, devolet illuc, res ubi magna nitet, domino sene.

33. Ille gravem duro terram qui vertit aratro, miles, nautæque per omnes audaces mare qui currunt, hac mente laborem sese ferre, senes ut in otia tuta recedant, aiunt, cum sibi sint congesta cibaria.

34. Est modus in rebus, sunt certi denique fines,  
Quos ultra citraque nequit consistere rectum.

35. Nec diu pax Albana mansit, invidia vulgi, quod tribus militibus fortuna publica commissa fuerit, vanum ingenium dictatoris corrumpit, et quoniam recta consilia haud bene evenerant, pravis reconciliare popularium animos cœpit.

36. Igitur, ut prius in bello pacem, sic in pace bellum quærens, quia suæ civitati animorum plus quam virium cernebat esse, ad bellum concitat alios populos.

37. Postquam, regno diviso, legati Africa discessere, et Jugurtha, contra timorem animi, præmia sceleris adeptum sese videt; certum ratus, quod ex amicis apud Numantiam acceperat, omnia Romæ venalia esse, simul et illorum pollicitationibus accensus, quos paullo ante muneribus expleverat, in regnum Adherbalis animum intendit.

38. Ceterum fama tanti facinoris per omnem Africam brevi divulgatur. Adherbalem omnesque qui sub imperio Micipsæ fuerant, metus invadit; in duas partes discedunt; plures Adherbalem sequuntur, sed illum alterum bello meliores. Igitur Jugurtha quam maximas potest copias armat; urbes, partim vi, alias voluntate, imperio suo adjungit; omni Numidiæ imperare parat.

39. Prodigus et stultus donat quæ spernit et odit.

40. Fingit equum tenera docilem cervice magister ire viam qua monstret eques.

41. Quo semel est imbuta recens, servabit odorem  
Testa diu.

42. Invidus, iracundus, iners, vinosus, amator;  
Nemo adeo ferus est, ut non mitescere possit,  
Si modo culturæ patientem commodet aurem.

43. Vides, quæ maxima credis  
Esse mala, exiguum censum, turpemque repulsam,  
Quanto devites animi capitisque labore.  
Impiger extremos curris mercator ad Indos,  
Per mare pauperiem fugiens, per saxa, per ignes:  
Ne cures ea quæ stulte miraris et optas,  
Discere et audire et meliori credere non vis?

44. Cervus equum pugna melior communibus herbis  
Pellebat, donec minor in certamine longo  
Imploravit opes hominis, frænumque recepit;  
Sed postquam victor violens discessit ab hoste,  
Non equitem dorso, non frænum depulit ore.  
Sic qui pauperiem veritus, potiore metallis  
Libertate caret, dominum vehet improbus, atque  
Serviet æternum, quia parvo nesciet uti.  
Cui non conveniet sua res, ut calceus olim,  
Si pede major erit, subvertet; si minor, teret.

45. Hic onus horret  
Ut parvis animis, et parvo corpore majus;  
Hic subit et perfert. Aut virtus nomen inane est,  
Aut decus et pretium recte petit experiens vir.



46. Postquam Cato adsedit, consulares omnes, itemque senatus magna pars, sententiam ejus laudant, virtutem animi ad cœlum ferunt. Alii alios increpantes timidos vocant; Cato magnus atque clarus habetur.

47. Sciebam sæpenumero parva manu cum magnis legionibus hostium contendisse; cognoveram parvis copiis bella gesta cum opulentis regibus; ad hoc, sæpe fortunæ violentiam toleravisse; facundia Græcos, gloria belli Gallos ante Romanos fuisse. Ac mihi multa agitanti constabat, paucorum civium egregiam virtutem cuncta patravisse, eoque factum, uti divitias paupertas, multitudinem paucitas superaret.

48. Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato. Ille mansuetudine et misericordia clarus factus, huic severitas dignitatem addiderat. His genus, ætas, eloquentia prope æqualia fuere.

49. Numæ morte ad interregnum res rediit. Inde Tullum Hostilium, nepotem Hostilii, cujus in infima arce clara pugna adversus Sabinos fuerat, regem populus jussit. Patres auctores facti.

50. Sed, confecto prælio, tum vero cerneret quanta audacia, quantaque animi vis fuisset in exercitu Catilinæ. Nam fere quem quisque pugna locum ceperat, eum, amissa anima, corpore tegebat. Pauci autem, quos cohors prætorica disjecerat, paullo diversius, sed omnes tamen adversis vulneribus conciderant. Catilina vero longe a suis inter hostium cadavera repertus est, paullulum etiam spirans, ferociamque animi, quam habuerat vivus, in vultu retinens.

51. Sic locutus, cum literis, quas Micipsæ redderet, dimisit. Earum sententia hæc erat: Jugurthæ tui bello Numantino longe maxima virtus fuit; nobis ob merita carus est, uti idem senatui sit, et populo Romano, summa ope nitentur. Tibi quidem pro nostra amicitia gratulor. Igitur rex, ubi quæ fama acceperat, ex literis imperatoris ita esse cognovit, cum virtute viri, tum gratia permotus, flexit animum suum, et Jugurtham beneficiis vincere aggressus est, statimque adoptavit, et testamento pariter cum filiis heredem instituit. Sed ipse paucos post annos, morbo atque ætate confectus, cum sibi finem vitæ adesse intelligeret, coram amicis et cognatis, item Adherbale et Hiempsale filiis, dicitur hujuscemodi verba cum Jugurtha habuisse.

*Notes on the foregoing.*

1. *Fœdere icto*—the league being struck (see Rule 14). The propriety of the usage of the word *strike* in such case, arises

from the fact of leagues having been ratified by *striking*, i. e. sacrificing, a victim.

2. *Ex fœdere icto*—according to the struck league, i. e. the league which had been struck.

*Tullus imperat*—Tullus commands Mettus inquiring what he (Tullus) would command him, according, &c.

3. *Abducti (sunt)*—were withdrawn to their homes.

*Cui soror*. The order is, *Cui soror, virgo, fuit obvia*, “whom his sister, a virgin, met:” literally, was meeting. *Obvia* governs a dative.

*Quæ desponsa fuerat*—who had been betrothed to one of the Curiatii. Mark the force of the pluperfect. The betrothal had occurred before the battle.

*Cognitoque*—and having recognized on her brother’s shoulders the military cloak of her spouse. The cloak *being* recognized. See Rule 14.

*Quod ipsa confecerat*—which she herself had wrought. See Note under Rule 12, and Rule 12 itself.

4. *Qui plurimus*—which, very large, very much, i. e. to a great extent hangs over (overlooks) the city. *Plurimus* agrees with *qui*, i. e. *collis*.

*Aspectat*. The subject is *qui*, i. e. *collis*. “And which looks at the opposite citadels from its top,” i. e. commands a view of.

*Miratur*—Æneas wonders at the vast size of the city, once but Numidian huts. *Magalia* is in apposition with *molem*, which is put for the city itself. See Observation 10, Rule 5.

*Strepitumque*—the noise of the workmen and the paved streets (*strata viarum*). With *strata, loca* is understood. “The laid down places of the streets.”

*Pars ducere muros*—some (press on, instant) to raise the walls.

*Aptare locum tecto*—to fit out or prepare a site for a building, and to enclose it with a ditch.

5. *Nescit*—knows not how (*ne*, not, and *scire*, to know). The object of *reddere* is *beneficium*, understood; and the antecedent to *qui* is *ille*, understood, the subject of *est* and of the sentence.

6. *Beneficiis ac munificentia*. See Rule 6. *Cato* is the subject of *habebatur*, understood; which latter has *magnus*, understood, as its complement.

7. *Deus est*—a God is in the world: i. e. according to the usage of the English, “There is a God.”

8. *Mea maxima cura*. See Observation 10.

*Pelago, flammis*, both governed by *ex*, understood.

9. *Constat*. The subject is the remainder of the sentence,



"That they were the Horatii and the Curiatii is quite well agreed on."

10. *Quibus rebus confectis*—which things being accomplished. See Rule 14.

*Omnia*—all things: equivalent to *omnes res*. See Rule 15.

13. *Patris*. The complements undergo no change; the parts changed being the subject, the object, and the verb.

17. *Terrent*. The verb is plural, to agree with the last-named subject. The verb *terret* is understood with each of the preceding singular subjects: the learner will observe that this is also the usage of the English language.

18. *Quas*. The student will pay especial attention to Rules 11, 12, with the Notes under them.

24. *Præstantior* (*præ*, before, and *stare*, to stand).

27. *In loco*—in the proper place, *i.e.* at the proper time. *Pecuniam negligere*, &c., &c., is the subject of *est*. See Observation 2.

28. *Dis*. The mark (^) over a word indicates that a letter or syllable is omitted. The word in question is syncopated for *divis*, the dative and ablative plural of *deus*; the old nominative was *divus*. See Definition 9.

*Te obire*. *Te* is the subject. See Rule 7.

*Nec—nec*. Two *necs* so coming together are translated, the first, *neither*; the second, *nor*. When so situated they are called correlatives; the first being called the antecedent, and the second the consequent.

*Decus columen*. In apposition with *te* in the accusative, or *Mæcenas* in the vocative.

29. *Cervis, Euro*. See Rule 10.

*Agente nimbos*—than the east wind (*Euro*) driving before it the clouds. "The cloud-driving east wind."

31. *Una, solaque*—the one and only thing.

*Nil admirari*. The subject of *est*. "To be struck with admiration of nothing." To set one's heart on nothing.

*Beatum. Hominem* is understood. See Rule 15.

32. *Missis ambagibus*—circumlocution being given up. Rule 14.

*Accipe*—hear. *Auribus* is understood. "Take in with the ears." So *accipe (oculis)*—"see."

*Qua ratione*—by what means.

*Turdus*. Understand *si*. "If or should a thrush or any other private thing (something for your own private use) be given to you, let it fly thither (be speedily sent) where a great property shines, the owner being an old man." (This is a satire on the

habit of paying court to the rich; of course the language is ironical.)

33. From *ille* to *miles* inclusive is a periphrasis for *agricola*, a husbandman. "He who turns up the sluggish soil with the hard ploughshare, the soldier, and the sailors who bold (boldly) voyage through every sea, say (*aiunt*) that they endure toil with this intent, that they (when) old may retire into safe ease (a quiet life of ease) when provisions (a subsistence) have been put up by them."

*Sibi*. The dative after the passive verb *congesta sint*. See Rule 8, and Observation 2 under it.

35. *Invidia vulgi*—the dissatisfaction of the common people (the cause of which was) that the public fortune was given up to the keeping of three champions warped (turned from the path of honour) the fickle disposition of the dictator. And, since straightforward plans had not turned out well, he began to attach (to himself) the affections of his subjects by dishonest (plans, *consiliis*).

36. *Ut prius*—as before seeking peace during a period of war (*in bello*), so (now) seeking war during a time of peace, he rouses to arms other states, because he perceived that his own state had more courage (of courage) than strength. The student will observe that the principal verb does not *necessarily* come first in the sentence, and that it cannot be in a subsidiary or dependent clause, such as that beginning with *quia* in this place, the words wherein are employed to give a reason for the act expressed by *conciat*.

*Plus animorum* is the accusative subject of *esse*. "He perceived that more of courage was to his own state." For the syntax of *civitati* see Rule 9, with the Observations under it.

37. *Regno diviso*—the kingdom being divided, *i. e.* after the division of the kingdom.

*Et Jugurtha*—and (when, *postquam*) Jugurtha perceived that he had obtained (*sese adeptum esse*) the reward of his perfidy, thinking that that was true (*id esse certum*) which he had heard, *viz.* that all things were saleable (to be had for money) at Rome, and also (*simul*) fired by the promises of those whom he had a short time before satiated with money, &c. &c.

*Africa*, the ablative governed by *ex*, understood.

*Sese*, the accusative subject of *adeptum esse*. See Rule 7.

*Certum ratus*. Supply *id* (for *eam rem*) *esse*.

*Quod acceperat*. See Rules 11, 12, and Notes; also Note on *accipe* in sentence 32 of the foregoing.

*Romæ*—at Rome. The syntax of this and such words will be hereafter laid down in a definite rule.

38. *Facinoris*. *Facinus* is a deed, good or bad; *scelus*, a deed *always* bad.

*Brevi*, an adverb, or the ablative of *brevis*, agreeing with *tempore*, understood.

*Illum alterum*—the other. *Illum* supplies the place of the definite article wanted in Latin.

*Bello meliores*—those who were superior in war (follow) the other.

*Quam maximas copias*—as great a number of forces as possible. This is a common phraseology in Cæsar, Sallust, and Livy.

*Partim vi*—some by violent measures, others of their own free will.

39. *Prodigus, stultus*. See Rule 15.

*Quæ spernit*—the things which he despises. The antecedent of *quæ* is *ea*—those things; and the *ea* (which is understood) is the object of *donat*. This is a common usage in the Latin language, and nearly allied to the conversion of the relative and the antecedent in English into the compound *what*.

40. *Tenera cervice*—the docile horse of (possessed of) tender (flexible) neck. See Observation 11, under Rule 5.

*Ire viam*—to go the way. This accusative may be regarded as governed by the intransitive *ire*, in like manner as intransitive verbs in English are followed by an objective case analogous to the verb in signification: as, "He walked a distance of forty miles." It is evident, however, that the object in both languages is governed by a preposition understood.

41. "A jar (or vessel) will long retain the odour with which (when) fresh it has once been tinged."

42. *Culturæ*—to learning or philosophy. Governed by *commodet*. See Observation 6, under Rule 3.

43. "You see with how much labour of mind and body you shun those misfortunes which you believe (to be) the greatest;" *viz.* a small income and degrading rejection (when seeking a political office).

*Quæ maxima credis*. *Mala* is the object of *devites*, and the antecedent of *quæ*, and this *quæ* is the accusative subject of *esse* understood: *mala* is out of its proper clause as the antecedent. This is a species of *attraction*, the name given to a construction of which the Latin and especially the Greek writers were very fond.

*Censum, repulsam*, in apposition with *mala*.

*Ne cures ea*—do you not wish, *i. e.* will you not learn, and hear, and intrust yourself to a better person (one of more experience, *i. e.* a philosopher), that you may not (lest you may)



regard those things which you foolishly admire and wish for. *Ne* is equivalent to *ut non*.

44. *Minor*—until (the horse) worse, *i. e.* vanquished in the long conflict.

*Discessit*, the subject is *equus*.

*Sic qui*—in like manner the man (*homo*, understood) who fearing poverty gives up his liberty (*caret libertate*), preferable to metals, wretch that he is (*improbis* agreeing with *homo*), will carry a master and will be a slave for ever, because he will not know (how) to use a little, *i. e.* to be content with a competency.

*Libertate* is the ablative governed by *caret*; it will be laid down hereafter that verbs of abounding and the opposite are followed by the ablative.

*Metallis, parvo*. For the syntax of these words respectively consult Rule 10, and Observation 6, Rule 3. Also with regard to the adjective *parvo*, consult Rule 15.

45. "One man (*hic*) fears the load as too great for his little soul and little body (literally, greater than his soul, &c. &c.). Another (*hic*) goes under it, and carries it through. Either virtue is an empty name, or the man who has made the attempt justly lays claim to the glory and the reward."

46. *Consulares omnes*—all persons of consular rank.

*Magnus atque clarus*. See Rules 15 and 13.

47. "I was aware that they (the Romans) had often contended against (with, *cum*) numerous legions of the enemy with small forces (a handful of men). I had known that wars had been waged (*gesta esse*) against opulent kings with small resources; moreover (*ad hoc*, in addition to this) that they (I had known that they, the Romans) had often endured the shock (a reverse) of fortune; (I had known) that the Greeks were before (excelled) the Romans in eloquence, that the Gauls (excelled them) in the glory of war (military glory). And to me, pondering over many things, it was evident that the distinguished virtue of a few citizens had accomplished all, and by this means that it had happened that poverty overcame riches, and a few men (*paucitas*) overcame a great number.

*Contendisse, gesta esse, toleravisse, fuisse, patravisse, factum esse*. The accusative subjects of these infinitives respectively are, *Romanos, bella, Romanos, Græcos, and Gallos, virtutem*, the whole sentence from *uti* to *superaret* inclusive.

*Constabat*. The subject is the whole sentence from *paucorum* to *superaret* inclusive.

48. *Cato*, the subject of *habebatur*, understood.

*Ille—huic*. The former became (*factus est*) illustrious by his

clemency and compassion; austerity of manner had imparted dignity to the latter (*huic*). When *hic* and *ille* are so used, *hic* signifies the latter; *ille*, the former.

*His genus*—their family extraction, or rank, age, (and) eloquence were nearly (things) equal. *His* is the dative for the genitive complement. See Observation 9, under Rule 5. *Æqualia* is the nominative plural of the adjective, and neuter as qualifying three nouns all neuter.

*Clarus, magnus*. For the syntax of these words consult Rules 13 and 15.

49. "At the death of Numa the government returned to an interregnum." *Morte* may be regarded as the ablative of the cause. See Rule 6.

*Inde*—after that the people elected as king Tullus Hostilius, the grandson of (that) Hostilius, whose stand (*pugna*) against the Sabines at the bottom of the citadel had been well known.

*Patres auctores facti (sunt)*—the fathers became approvers (of the act); *i. e.* gave their assent. For the syntax of *auctores* consult Rule 13.

50. *Confecto prælio*—the battle being finished. See Rule 14.

*Fuisset*. See Observation 1, under Rule 1. The principle enunciated in this observation with regard to two singular nouns copulatively connected is more frequently neglected in Latin than in English.

*Quem quisque*. Both *quisque* and *locum* are out of their own clause. This also is a species of attraction: the order should be, *Nam fere quisque tegebat eum locum corpore, amissa anima, quem ceperat pugna*.

*Amissa anima*—his life being lost. "When he had lost his life."

*Paullo diversius*—a little farther asunder.

*Adversis vulneribus*—with adverse wounds. "Wounds in their front."

*A suis*—from his men (*militibus*).

*Quam habuerat vivus*—which he (when) alive had possessed.

51. "Having thus spoken he dismissed him with a letter, which he should deliver (to deliver, in English) to Micipsa." *Literæ*, in the plural, signifies an epistle; *litera*, in the singular, a letter of the alphabet.

*Earum sententia hæc erat*—this was (is, in English) a copy of it.

*Longe maxima*—the valour of your Jugurtha shone forth conspicuous (was by far the greatest).

*Summa ope nitemur*—we (I) shall endeavour with all my power that he be the same to the senate, &c. &c. *i. e.* that he be in equal estimation, &c. &c.



*Pro nostra amicitia*—in regard of our friendship.

*Ita esse*—when he understood that those things (*ea*) which he had heard by report were so (as he had heard them). *Esse*. The subject is *ea*=*eas res*, the antecedent of *quæ*.

*Cum*—*tum*. These are correlative terms, and when so related the former signifies, *as well*, the latter, *as*.

*Filiis*. The ablative, which, though plural, is in apposition with *Adherbale* and *Hiempsale*, both together making a plural.

### Rules.

16. An adjective in the neuter gender is followed *sometimes* by the genitive of the noun which it qualifies.

17. Adjectives which signify desire, knowledge, remembrance, ignorance, care, fear, guilt, and various affections of the mind are followed by a genitive.

18. Adjectives and verbs which signify profit or loss, likeness and unlikeness, &c. &c. are followed by a dative.

19. Verbal adjectives ending in *ax* are followed by a genitive; and verbal adjectives ending in *bilis*, and participles in *dus*, are followed by the dative.

20. Adjectives and verbs signifying plenty or want, govern, sometimes the genitive, sometimes the ablative: the verbs, however, most frequently the ablative.

21. The adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, *præditus*, *captus*, *contentus*, &c. &c., require an ablative.

22. The verb *esse*, implying possession, property, or duty, is followed by a genitive; which, however, is not governed by *esse* itself, but is the complement of some noun understood.

23. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, warning, &c. &c., are followed, in the active voice, by an accusative expressing the person accused, &c. &c., and by a genitive expressing the crime, &c. &c. In the passive voice this genitive only is retained.

24. All verbs used acquisitively, that is, expressing something done for, or to a person or thing, require the dative of such person or thing. Some of such verbs take after them, in addition, an accusative, as being transitive verbs.

25. Verbs of asking, teaching, clothing, concealing, admonishing, &c. &c., govern two accusatives—one of the person, another of the thing. In the passive voice the accusative of the thing only is retained.

26. A preposition in a compound word requires after it the case which the preposition governs when not in a compound.

27. *Natus*, *satus*, *creatus*, *ortus*, *editus*, take after them an ablative, with or without the prepositions, *e*, *ex*, &c. &c.

28. The supine in *um* follows verbs implying motion, and the supine in *u* follows adjectives; the former has an active, the latter a passive signification.

29. The part affected is put in the accusative, which, as grammarians lay down, is governed by *quoad* or *secundum*, prepositions implying *as to*.

30. The gerund in *di* serves as a genitive case, the gerund in *do* as a dative or ablative, and the gerund in *dum* as an accusative.

31. The word which expresses the price of an article is put in the ablative case, except the adjectives *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *minoris*, *tantivis*, *quantilibet*, *quanticunque*, which are expressed in the genitive.

32. The name of a town (if of the first or second declension and singular number) is put in the genitive, which answers to the question—*where?*

*Note.*—In like manner are used the genitives *humi*, *domi*, *belli*, *militiæ*.

33. If the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, it is put in the ablative.

34. The name of the place towards which motion is directed is put in the accusative, with or without a preposition governing such case.

#### *Sentences.*

1. Postremo, omnes quos flagitium, egestas, conscius animus exagitabat; ii Catilinæ proximi familiaresque erant. Quod si quis etiam a culpa vacuus in amicitiam ejus inciderat, quotidiano usu atque illecebris facile par similisque ceteris efficiebatur.

2. Ubi satis explorata sunt, quæ voluit, in unum omnes convocat, quibus maxima necessitudo et plurimum audaciæ.

3. Ceterum juvenus sed maxime nobilium, Catilinæ inceptis favebat. Quibus in otio vel magnifice, vel molliter vivere copia erat, incerta pro certis, bellum, quam pacem malebant. Fuere item ea tempestate, qui crederent Marcum Licinium Crassum non ignarum consilii fuisse; quia Cneius Pompeius, invisus ipsi, magnum exercitum ductabat, cujusvis opes voluisse contra illius potentiam crescere, simul confisum, si conjuratio valuisset, facile apud illos principem se fore.

4. Fuere ea tempestate, qui dicerent, Catilinam, oratione habita, humani corporis sanguinem, vino permixtum, in pateris circumtulisse; inde cum post execrationem omnes degustavissent, sicuti in solemnibus sacris fieri consuevit, aperuisse consilium suum, atque eo, dictitare, fecisse, quo inter se fidi magis forent, alius alii tanti facinoris conscii. Nonnulli ficta hæc, multa præ-

terea, existimabant, ab iis, qui Ciceronis invidiam, quæ postea orta est, leniri credebant atrocitate sceleris eorum, qui pœnas dederant.

5. His rebus comparatis, Catilina nihilominus in proximum annum consulatum petebat; sperans, si designatus foret, facile se ex voluntate Antonio usurum. Neque interea quietus erat, sed omnibus modis insidias parabat Ciceroni. Neque illi tamen ad cavendum dolus, aut astutiæ deerant, namque, a principio consulatus sui, multa pollicendo per Fulviam, effecerat, ut Quintus Curius, de quo paullo ante memoravi, consilia Catilinæ sibi proderet. Ad hoc, collegam suum Antonium, pactione provinciæ perpulerat, ne contra rempublicam sentiret; circum se præsidia amicorum atque clientium occulte habebat. Postquam dies comitiorum venit, et Catilinæ neque petitio, neque insidiæ, quas consulibus fecerat prospere cessere, constituit bellum facere et extrema omnia experiri.

6. Igitur, perterritis ac dubitantibus ceteris, Cornelius, eques Romanus, operam suam pollicitus, et cum eo Lucius Vargunteius, senator, constituere, ea nocte paullo post cum armatis hominibus introire ad Ciceronem ac imparatum confodere. Curius, ubi intelligit quantum periculi consuli impendat, propere per Fulviam, dolum, qui parabatur, enunciat. Interea Manlius in Etruria plebem sollicitare, egestate simul ac dolore injuriæ novarum rerum cupidam.

7. Deos hominesque testamur, nos arma neque contra patriam cepisse, neque quo periculum homini faceremus, sed uti corpora nostra ab injuria tuta forent, qui miseri, egentes, violentia atque crudelitate fœneratorum, plerique patriæ, sed omnes fama atque fortunis expertes sumus; neque cuiquam nostrum licuit, more majorum, lege uti, neque amisso patrimonio, liberum corpus habere; tanta sævitia fœneratorum atque prætoris fuit.

8. Igitur Publio Umbreno cuidam negotium dat, uti legatos Allobrogum requirat, eosque, si possit, impellat ad societatem belli; existimans, publice privatimque ære alieno oppressos, præterea, quod natura gens Gallica bellicosa esset, facile eos ad tale consilium adduci posse. Umbrenus, quod in Gallia negotiatus, plerisque principibus notus erat, atque eos noverat; itaque sine mora, ubi primum legatos in foro conspexit, percunctatus pauca de statu civitatis, et quasi dolens ejus casum, requirere cœpit, "quem exitum tantis malis sperarent?" Postquam illos videt queri de avaritia magistratum, accusare senatum, quod in eo auxilii nihil esset, miseriis suis remedium mortem expectare: "At ego," inquit, "vobis, si modo viri esse vultis, rationem



ostendam, qua tanta ista mala effugiatis." Hæc ubi dixit, Allobroges, in maximam spem adducti, Umbrenum orare, uti sui miseretur: nihil tam asperum, neque tam difficile, quin cupidissime facturi essent, dum ea res civitatem ære alieno liberaret. Ille eos in domum Decimi Bruti perducit, quod foro propinqua, neque aliena consilii, propter Semproniam; nam tum Brutus ab Roma aberat. Præterea Gabinium arcessit, quo major auctoritas sermoni inesset: eo præsentem conjurationem aperit; nominat socios, præterea multos cujusque generis, quo legatis animus amplior esset; dein eos pollicitos operam suam dimittit.

9. Postquam, Cæsar dicendi finem fecit, ceteri verbo, alii alii, varie adsentiebantur; at Marcus Porcius Cato, rogatus sententiam, hujusmodi orationem habuit.

10. Postquam, ut dixi, senatus in Catonis sententiam discessit, consul, optimum factum ratus, noctem, quæ instabat, antecapere, ne quid eo spatio novaretur, triumviros, quæ supplicium postulabat, parare jubet; ipse, dispositis præsidiis, Lentulum in carcerem deducit: idem fit ceteris per prætores. Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum adpellatur, ubi paullulum ascenderit ad lævam. Eum muniunt undique parietes. In eum locum postquam demissus Lentulus, quibus præceptum erat, laqueo gulam fregere. Ita ille patricius, ex clarissima gente Corneliorum, qui consulare imperium habuerat, dignum moribus factisque suis exitum vitæ invenit.

11. Interea Catilina cum expeditis in prima acie versari, laborantibus succurrere, integros pro sauciis arcessere, omnia providere, multum ipse pugnare, sæpe hostem ferire, strenui militis et boni imperatoris officia simul exsequebatur. Petreius, ubi videt Catilinam, contra ac ratus erat, magna vi tendere, cohortem prætoriam in medios hostes inducit; eos perturbatos atque alios alibi resistentes interficit. Postquam fusas copias, seque cum paucis relictum videt Catilina, memor generis atque pristinae dignitatis, in confertissimos hostes incurrit, ibique pugnans confoditur.

12. At Jugurtha manifestus tanti sceleris, non prius omisit contra verum niti quam animadvertit supra gratiam atque pecuniam suam invidiam facti esse. Igitur, quamquam in priore actione ex amicis quinquaginta vades dederat, regno magis, quam vadibus consulens, clam in Numidiam Bomilcarem dimittit, veritus, ne reliquos populares metus invaderet parendi sibi, si de illo supplicium sumptum foret. Et ipse paucis diebus profectus est, jussus ab senatu Italia decedere. Sed postquam Roma egressus

est, fertur sæpe eo tacitus respiciens postremo dixisse, Urbem venalem et mature perituram, si emptorem invenerit.

13. Interea Jugurtha, ubi, quæ Metellus agebat, ex nunciis accepit, diffidere suis rebus. Ac tum demum veram deditionem facere conatus est. Igitur legatos ad consulem cum suppliciis mittit, qui tantummodo ipsi liberisque vitam peterent, alia omnia dederent populo Romano. Sed Metello jam antea experimentis cognitum erat genus Numidarum infidum, ingenio mobili, novarum rerum avidum. Itaque legatos alium ab alio diversos adgreditur, ac, paullatim tentando, postquam opportunos cognovit, multa pollicendo persuadet, uti Jugurtham maxime vivum, sin id parum procedat, necatum sibi traderent, ceterum palam, quæ ex voluntate forent, regi nunciari jubet.

14. Aurum per medios ire satellites

Et perrumpere amat saxa, potentius  
Ictu fulmineo.

15. Divis orte bonis, optime Romulæ  
Custos gentis, abes jam nimium diu,  
Maturum reditum pollicitus patrum  
Sancto concilio, redi.

Lucem redde tuæ, dux bone, patriæ;  
Instar veris enim vultus ubi tuus  
Affulsit, populō gratior it dies,  
Et soles melius nitent.

Ut mater juvenem, quem Notus invido  
Flatu Carpathii trans maris æquora  
Cunctantem spatio longius annuo  
Dulci distinet a domo,

Votis omnibusque et precibus vocat,  
Curvo nec faciem littore dimovet;  
Sic desideriiis icta fidelibus

Quærit patria Cæsarem.

Tutus bos etenim rura perambulat;  
Nutrit rura Ceres, almaque Faustitas;  
Pacatum volitant per mare navitæ;

Culpari metuit Fides.

Quis Parthum paveat? Quis gelidum Scythen?

Quis, Germania quos horrida parturit  
Fœtus, incolumi Cæsare? Quis feræ

Bellum curet Iberiæ?

Condit quisque diem collibus in suis,  
Et vitem viduas ducit ad arbores;

Hinc ad vina redit lætus, et alteris

Te menses adhibet Deum.



Te multa prece, te prosequitur mero  
 Defuso pateris, et Laribus tuum  
 Miscet numen, uti Græcia Castoris,  
 Et magni memor Herculis.  
 Longas O utinam, dux bone, ferias  
 Præstes Hesperiaë, dicimus integro  
 Sicci mane die, dicimus uvidi,  
 Cum sol Oceano subest.

16. Altera jam teritur bellis civilibus ætas,  
 Suis et ipsa Roma viribus ruit :  
 Quam neque finitimi valuerunt perdere Marsi,  
 Minacis aut Etrusca Porsenæ manus,  
 Æmula nec virtus Capuæ, nec Spartacus acer,  
 Novisque rebus infidelis Allobrox ;  
 Nec fera cærulea domuit Germania pube,  
 Parentibusque abominatus Annibal,  
 Impia perdemus devoti sanguinis ætas,  
 Ferisque rursus occupabitur solum.  
 Barbarus, heu ! cineres insistet victor, et urbem  
 Eques sonante verberabit ungula ;  
 Quæque carent ventis et solibus, ossa Quirini  
 (Nefas videre) dissipabit insolens.  
 Forte quid expediat, communiter, aut melior pars,  
 Malis carere quæritis laboribus ?  
 Nulla sit hac potior sententia ; Phocæorum  
 Velut profugit exsecrata civitas,  
 Agros atque Lares patrios habitandaque fana  
 Apris reliquit et rapacibus lupis ;  
 Ire pedes quocunque ferent, quocunque per undas  
 Notus vocabit, aut protervus Africus.

17. Qui fit, Mæcenas, ut nemo, quam sibi sortem  
 Seu ratio dederit, seu fors objecerit, illa  
 Contentus vivat : laudet diversa sequentes ?  
 O fortunati mercatores ! gravis annis  
 Miles ait, multo jam fractus membra labore.  
 Contra mercator, navem jactantibus Austris,  
 Militia est potior ; quid enim ? Concurritur, horæ  
 Momento cita mors venit, aut victoria læta.  
 Agricola laudat juris legumque peritus,  
 Sub galli cantum consultor ubi ostia pulsat.  
 Ille, datis vadibus, qui rure extractus in urbem est,  
 Solos felices viventes clamat in urbe.  
 Cætera de genere hoc (adeo sunt multa) loquacem  
 Delassare valent Fabium.

18. Egressum magna me excepit Aricia Roma  
 Hospitio modico. Rhetor comes Heliodorus,  
 Græcorum linguæ doctissimus: inde Forum Appi  
 Differtum nautis, cauponibus atque malignis.  
 Hoc iter ignavi divisimus, altius ac nos  
 Præcinctis unum. Minus est gravis Appia tardis.  
 Hic ego propter aquam, quod erat teterrima, ventri  
 Indico bellum, cœnantes haud animo æquo  
 Exspectans comites. Jam nox inducere terris  
 Umbras, et cœlo diffundere signa parabat;  
 Tum pueri nautis, pueris convicia nautæ  
 Ingerere. Huc appelle. Trecentos inseris, ohe,  
 Jam satis est. Dum æs exigitur, dum mula ligatur,  
 Tota abit hora. Mali culices, ranæque palustres  
 Avertunt somnos.
- Tandem fessus dormire viator  
 Incipit, ac missæ pastum retinacula mulæ  
 Nauta piger saxo religat, stertitque supinus.  
 Jamque dies aderat, cum nil procedere lintrem  
 Sentimus: donec cerebrosus prosilit unus,  
 Ac mulæ nautæque caput lumbosque saligno  
 Fuste dolat, quarta vix demum exponimur hora.
19. Nunc ad me redeo, libertino patre natum,  
 Quem rodunt omnes libertino patre natum;  
 Nunc, quia, Mæcenas, tibi sum convictor, at olim  
 Quod mihi pareret legio Romana tribuno.  
 Dissimile hoc illi est, quia non, ut forsit honorem  
 Jure mihi invidet quisvis, ita te quoque amicum.  
 Præsertim cautum dignos assumere, prava  
 Ambitione procul. Felicem dicere non hoc  
 Me possum casu, quod te sortitus amicum:  
 Nulla etenim mihi te fors obtulit, optimus olim  
 Virgilius, post hunc Varius, dixere quid essem.  
 Ut veni coram, singultim pauca locutus,  
 (Infans namque pudor prohibebat plura profari).  
 Non ego me claro natum patre, non ego circum  
 Me Satureiano vectari rura caballo,  
 Sed, quod eram, narro. Respondes, ut tuus est mos,  
 Pauca. Abeo, et revocas nono post mense, jubesque  
 Esse in amicorum numero. Magnum hoc ego duco,  
 Quod placui tibi, qui turpi secernis honestum,  
 Non patre præclaro, sed vita et pectore puro.
20. Ibam forte via sacra, sicut meus est mos,  
 Nescio quid meditans nugarum, et totus in illis;

Accurrit quidam notus mihi nomine tantum,  
 Arreptaque manu, Quid agis, dulcissime, rerum?  
 Suaviter, ut nunc est, inquam, et cupio omnia quæ vis.  
 Cum assectaretur, Numquid vis? occupo. At ille,  
 Noris nos, inquit; docti sumus.

Ut illi

Nil respondebam, Misere cupis, inquit, abire,  
 Jamdudum video, sed nil agis. Usque tenebo,  
 Persequar. Hinc quo nunc iter est tibi? Nil opus est te  
 Circumagi; quendam volo visere, non tibi notum;  
 Trans Tiberim longe cubat is, prope Cæsaris hortos.  
 Nil habeo quod agam, et non sum piger. Usque sequar te.  
 Demitto auriculas, ut iniquæ mentis asellus,  
 Cum gravius dorso subiit onus.

21. Sunt quibus in Satira videor nimis acer, et ultra  
 Legem tendere opus; sine nervis altera, quicquid  
 Composui, pars esse putat, similesque meorum  
 Mille die versus deduci posse. Trebati,  
 Quid faciam, præscribe. Quiescas. Ne faciam, inquis,  
 Omnino versus? Aio. Peream male, si non  
 Optimum erat: verum nequeo dormire. Ter uncti  
 Transnanto Tiberim, somno quibus est opus alto,  
 Irriguumque mero sub noctem corpus habento.  
 Aut, si tantus amor scribendi te rapit, aude  
 Cæsaris invicti res dicere, multa laborum  
 Præmia laturus. Cupidum, pater optime, vires  
 Deficiunt: neque enim quivis horrentia pilis  
 Agmina, nec fracta pereuntes cuspide Gallos,  
 Aut labentis equo describat vulnera Parthi.  
 Attamen et justum poteras et scribere fortem,  
 Scipiadam ut sapiens Lucilius. Haud mihi deero,  
 Cum res ipsa feret; nisi dextro tempore, Flacci  
 Verba per attentam non ibunt Cæsaris aurem;  
 Cui male si palpere, recalcitrat undique tutus.  
 Quanto rectius hoc, quam tristi lædere versu  
 Pantolabum scurram, Nomentanumque nepotem!  
 Cum sibi quisque timet, quanquam est intactus, et odit.
22. Non in caro nidore voluptas  
 Summa, sed in teipso est. Tu pulmentaria quære  
 Sudando.
23. Pauper Opimius argenti positi intus et auri,  
 Quondam lethargo grandi est oppressus, ut hæres  
 Jam circum loculos et claves lætus ovansque  
 Curreret. Hunc medicus multum celer atque fidelis

Excitat hoc pacto ; mensam poni jubet, atque  
 Effundi saccos nummorum, accedere plures  
 Ad numerandum : hominem sic erigit. Addit et illud :  
 Ni tua custodis, avidus jam hæc auferet hæres.  
 Men' vivo? Ut vivas igitur, vigila : hoc age. Quid vis?  
 Deficient inopem venæ te, ni cibus atque  
 Ingens accedat stomacho fultura ruenti.  
 Tu cessas? Agedum, sume hoc ptisanarium oryzæ.  
 Quanti emptæ? Parvo. Quanti ergo? Octussibus. Eheu!

24. Protinus ut moneam (si quid monitoris eges tu)  
 Quid de quoque viro, et cui dicas, sæpe videto :  
 Percontatorem fugito, nam garrulus idem est ;  
 Nec retinent patulæ commissa fideliter aures ;  
 Et semel emissum volat irrevocabile verbum.  
 Qualem commendes, etiam atque etiam aspice, ne mox  
 Incutiant aliena tibi peccata pudorem.

*Address of Venus to her husband, Vulcan, in which she asks a  
 suit of armour for Æneas.*

25. Nox ruit, et fuscis tellurem amplectitur alis :  
 At Venus haud animo nequicquam exterrita mater,  
 Laurentumque minis et duro mota tumultu,  
 Vulcanum alloquitur, thalamoque hæc conjugis aureo  
 Incipit, et dictis divinum aspirat amorem :  
 Dum bello Argolici vastabant Pergama reges  
 Debita, casurasque inimicis ignibus arces ;  
 Non ullum auxilium miseris, non arma rogavi  
 Artis opisque tuæ ; nec te, charissime conjux,  
 Incassumve tuos volui exercere labores ;  
 Quamvis et Priami deberem plurima natis,  
 Et durum Æneæ flevissem sæpe laborem.  
 Nunc, Jovis imperiis, Rutulorum constitit oris :  
 Ergo eadem supplex venio, et sanctum mihi numen  
 Arma rogo, genitrix nato. Te filia Nerei,  
 Te potuit lacrymis Tithonia flectere conjux.  
 Aspice qui coeant populi, quæ mœnia clausis  
 Ferrum acuant portis, in me excidiumque meorum.
26. Nunc age, Dardanium prolem quæ deinde sequatur  
 Gloria, qui maneant Itala de gente nepotes,  
 Illustres animas, nostrumque in nomen ituras,  
 Expediam dictis, et te tua fata docebo.
27. Cum Publius Rutilius Rufus amici cujusdam injustæ roga-  
 tionis resisteret, atque is per summam indignationem dixisset,  
 "Quid ergo mihi opus est amicitia tua, si, quod te rogo, non



facis?" "Imo," respondit Rutilus, "quid mihi tua, si propter te aliquid injuste facere me oporteat."

28. Pyrrhus, Epiri rex, orbis imperium spe complexus, Apollinem de bello adversus Romanos consuluit. Ille ambigue respondit: Aio te, Æacida, Romanos vincere posse. Quo dicto incitatus, bellum Romanis intulit. Lævinum Consulem, magna utrinque clade accepta, elephantorum auxilio, vicit. Amicis gratulantibus, sic respondit: Næ ego, si iterum sic vicero, sine milite revertar in Epirum. Romanos omnes in hostem versos honestis vulneribus oppetiisse cernens, exclamavit: O quam proclive mihi erat orbis imperio potiri, Romanos habenti milites! Tandem a Fabricio superatus, Tarentum refugit. Tum in Græciam regressus, dum Argos oppugnat, ictu tegulæ prostratus est.

29. Vix ea fatus erat, cum circumfusa repente  
Scindit se nubes, et in æthera purgat apertum.  
Restitit Æneas, claraque in luce refulsit,  
Os, humerosque Deo similis; namque ipsa decoram  
Cæsariem nato genitrix, lumenque juventæ  
Purpureum, et lætos oculis afflârat honores.

30. Hæc ubi Romæ comperta, senatus Catilinam et Manlium hostes judicat, ceteræ multitudini diem statuit, antequam sine fraude liceret ab armis discedere, præter rerum capitalium condemnatis.

31. Legati in Africam maturantes veniunt, eo magis, quod Romæ, dum proficisci parant, de proelio facto, et oppugnatione Cirtæ audiebatur.

32. Post, ubi silentium cœpit, producto Jugurtha, verba facit, Romæ Numidiæque facinora ejus memorat, scelera in patrem fratresque ostendit.

33. Extemplo tentanda fuga canit æquora Calchas,  
Nec posse Argolicis excindi Pergama telis,  
Omina ni repetant Argis, numenque reducant,  
Quod pelago, et curvis secum advexere carinis.

34. Tunc sic Mercurium alloquitur, ac talia mandat;  
Vade, age, nate, voca Zephyros, et labere pennis,  
Dardaniumque ducem, Tyria Carthagine qui nunc  
Exspectat, fatisque datas non respicit urbes,  
Alloquere, et celeres defer mea dicta per auras.

35. Devictis Sabinis, quum in magna gloria magnisque opibus regnum Tulli ac tota res Romana esset, nunciatum regi Patribusque est in monte Albano lapides cecidisse. Quod quum credi



vix posset, missis ad id visendum prodigium, in conspectu, haud aliter quam quum grandinem venti glomeratam in terras agunt, crebri cecidere cœlo lapides. Visi etiam audire vocem ingentem ex summi cacuminis luco, ut patrio ritu sacra Albani facerent, quæ, velut diis quoque simul cum patria relictis, oblivioni dederant, et aut Romana sacra susceperant, aut, fortunæ, ut fit, obirati, cultum reliquerant deum. Romanis quoque ab eodem prodigio novendiale sacrum publice susceptum est, seu voce cœlesti ex Albano monte missa, (nam id quoque traditur,) seu aruspicum monitu. Mansit certe solenne, ut, quandoque idem prodigium nunciaretur, feriæ per novem dies agerentur. Haud ita multo post pestilentia laboratum est; unde quum pigritia militandi oriretur, nulla tamen ab armis quies dabatur ab bellicoso rege, salubriora etiam credente militiæ, quam domi, juvenum corpora esse, donec ipse quoque longinquo morbo est implicitus. Tunc adeo fracti simul cum corpore sunt spiritus illi feroces, ut, qui nihil ante ratus esset minus regium, quam sacris dedere animum, repente omnibus magnis parvisque superstitionibus obnoxius degeret, religionibusque etiam populum impleret.

36. Inclyta justitia religioque ea tempestate Numæ Pompilii erat. Curibus Sabinis habitabat, consultissimus vir, ut in illa quisquam ætate esse poterat, omnis divini atque humani juris.

37. Quamvis digressu veteris confusus amici,  
Laudo tamen vacuis quod sedem figere Cumis  
Destinet atque unum civem donare Sibyllæ.

38. In vallem Ægeriæ descendimus, et speluncas  
Dissimiles veris.

39. Quid Romæ faciam? Mentiri nescio: librum,  
Si malus est, nequeo laudare, et poscere; motus  
Astrorum ignoro, funus promittere patris  
Nec volo nec possum, ranarum viscera nunquam  
Inspexi.

40. Tanti tibi non sit opaci  
Omnis arena Tagi, quodque in mare volvitur aurum,  
Ut somno careas, ponendaque præmia sumas  
Tristis, et a magno semper timearis amico.

41. Da testem Romæ tam sanctum, quam fuit hospes  
Numinis Idæi, procedat vel Numa, vel qui  
Servavit trepidam flagranti ex æde Minervam:  
Protinus ad censum, de moribus ultima fiet  
Quæstio, quot pascit servos, quot possidet agri  
Jugera? quam multa, magnaue paropside cœnat?

Quantum quisque sua nummorum servat in arca,  
Tantum habet et fidei.

42. Agmine facto,  
 Debuerant olim tenues migrâsse Quirites.  
 Haud facile emergunt, quorum virtutibus obstat  
 Res angusta domi; sed Romæ durior illis  
 Conatus; magno hospitium miserabile, magno  
 Servorum ventres, et frugi cœnula magno.
43. Da spatium vitæ, multos da, Jupiter, annos,  
 Hoc recto vultu, solum hoc et pallidus optas.  
 Sed quam continuis et quantis longa senectus  
 Plena malis! deformem, et tetrum ante omnia vultum,  
 Dissimilemque sui, deformem pro cute pellem,  
 Pendentesque genas, et tales aspice rugas,  
 Quales, umbriferos ubi pandit Tabraca saltus,  
 In vetula scalpit jam mater simia bucca.  
 Plurima sunt juvenum discrimina, pulchrior ille  
 Hoc, atque ille alio; multum hic robustior illo:  
 Una senum facies, cum voce trementia membra,  
 Et jam læve caput, madidique infantia nasi.  
 Frangendus misero gingiva panis inermi;  
 Usque adeo gravis uxori, gnatisque, sibi que,  
 Ut captatori moveat fastidia Cosso.
44. Nil ergo optabunt homines? Si consilium vis,  
 Permittes ipsis expendere numinibus quid  
 Conveniat nobis, rebusque sit utile nostris.  
 Nam pro jucundis aptissima quæque dabunt Dî,  
 Carior est illis homo, quam sibi, nos animorum  
 Impulsu, et cæca magna que cupidine ducti,  
 Conjugium petimus, partumque uxoris; at illis  
 Notum, qui pueri, qualisque futura sit uxor.  
 Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.  
 Fortem posce animum, et mortis terrore carentem:  
 Qui spatium vitæ extremum inter munera ponat  
 Naturæ, qui ferre queat quoscunque labores:  
 Nesciat irasci, cupiat nihil, et potiores  
 Herculis ærumnas credat, sævosque labores,  
 Et venere, et cœnis et plumis Sardanapali.  
 Monstro quod ipse tibi possis dare; semita certe  
 Tranquillæ per virtutem patet unica vitæ.  
 Nullum numen habes, si sit prudentia; sed te  
 Nos facimus, Fortuna, deam, cœloque locamus.
45. Sed civitas, incredibile memoratu est, adepta libertate,  
 quantum brevi creverit; tanta cupido gloriæ incesserat. Jam

primum juvenus, simul laboris ac belli patiens erat, in castris per usum militiam discebat, magisque in decoris armis et militaribus equis quam in conviviis lubidinem habebant. Igitur domi militiaeque boni mores colebantur; concordia maxima, minima avaritia erat; jus bonumque apud eos, non legibus magis quam natura valebat.

46. Numidæ paucis diebus jussa efficiunt: litteræ Adherbalis in senatu recitatæ, quarum sententia hæc fuit: "Non mea culpa sæpe ad vos oratum mitto, Patres, sed vis Jugurthæ subigit, quem tanta lubido extinguendi me invasit, uti neque vos, neque deos immortales in animo habeat, sanguinem meum, quam omnia, malit."

47. Diis equidem auspiciis reor, et Junone secunda,  
Huc cursum Iliacas vento tenuisse carinas.  
Quam tu urbem, soror, hanc cernes! quæ surgere regna  
Conjugio tali! Teucrûm comitantibus armis,  
Punica se quantis attollet gloria rebus!  
Tu modo posce deos veniam, sacrisque litatis,  
Indulge hospitio, causasque innecte morandi:  
Dum pelago desævit hyems, et aquosus Orion,  
Quassatæque rates, et non tractabile cælum.

48. Sed ea animi elatio, quæ cernitur in periculis et laboribus, si justitia vacat pugnatque non pro salute communi, sed pro suis commodis, in vitio est. Non enim modo id virtutis non est, sed est potius immanitatis, omnem humanitatem repellentis. Itaque probe definitur a Stoicis fortitudo, cum eam virtutem esse dicunt propugnantem pro æquitate. Quocirca nemo, qui fortitudinis gloriam consecutus est insidiis et malitia laudem est adeptus. Nihil honestum esse potest, quod justitia vacat.

49. Quis desiderio sit pudor, aut modus  
Tam cari capitis? Præcipe lugubres  
Cantus, Melpomene, cui liquidam pater  
Vocem cum cithara dedit.  
Ergo Quinctilium perpetuus sopor  
Urget! Cui Pudor, et Justitiæ soror  
Incorrupta Fides, nudaque Veritas,  
Quando ullum inveniet parem?  
Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit,  
Nulli flebilior, quam tibi, Virgili.  
Tu frustra pius, heu! non ita creditum  
Pocis Quinctilium deos.

50. Otium divos rogat in patienti  
Prensus Ægæo, simul atra nubes

Condidit lunam, neque certa fulgent  
 Sidera nautis :  
 Otium bello furiosa Thrace,  
 Otium Medi pharetra decori,  
 Grophe, non gemmis neque purpura ve-  
 nale nec auro.

51. Quapropter consuetudo imitanda medicorum est, qui leviter ægrotantes leniter curant, gravioribus autem morbis periculosas curationes et ancipites adhibere coguntur. Quare in tranquillo tempestatem adversam optare dementis est; subvenire autem tempestatem quavis ratione sapientis.

52. Justum et tenacem propositi virum  
 Non civium ardor prava jubentium,  
 Non vultus instantis tyranni  
 Mente quatit solida, neque Auster  
 Dux inquieti turbidus Adriæ,  
 Nec fulminantis magna Jovis manus :  
 Si fractus illabatur orbis,  
 Impavidum ferient ruinæ.

53. Si ad impetrandum nihil causæ haberem præter miserandam fortunam, quod paullo ante rex, genere, fama atque copiis potens, nunc deformatus ærumnis, inops, alienas opes exspecto, tamen erat majestatis Romani populi prohibere injuriam, neque cujusquam regnum per scelus cresceret. Verum ego his finibus ejectus sum, quos majoribus meis populus Romanus dedit, unde pater et avus una vobiscum expulere Syphacem et Carthaginienses.

54. Nam vi quidem regere patriam aut parentes, quamquam et possis et delicta corrigas, tamen importunum est; cum præsertim omnes rerum mutationes cædem, fugam aliaque hostilia portendant; frustra autem niti, neque aliud fatigando, nisi odium, quærere, extremæ dementiæ est.

55. Causa fuit pater his, qui macro pauper agello  
 Noluit in Flavî ludum me mittere, magni  
 Quo pueri magnis e centurionibus orti,  
 Ibant.  
 Sed puerum est ausus Romam portare, docendum  
 Artes, quas doceat quivis eques, atque senator  
 Semet prognatos.

*Notes on the foregoing Sentences.*

1. *Consciis animus*—a mind conscious of guilt, a guilty conscience. *Sceleris* is understood, or some such word, governed by *consciis*. See Rule 17.



*ii.* This is a mere repetition of *omnes*. It is usual to sum up all the individuals when situated in this way. The individuals, *quos flagitium, quos egestas, quos conscius animus exagitat*, may or may not be different characters, and the *ii* includes them all.

*A culpa vacuus.* See Rule 20. The preposition is thus frequently expressed.

*Par similis.* The former implies equality in acts of daring, the latter similarity in disposition. The two are not necessarily combined; hence there is no redundancy. For the syntax of *ceteris*, see Rule 18.

2. *Ubi ea* (for *eæ res*) *explorata sunt, quæ voluit (explorari), in unum (locum) convocat omnes (eos) quibus (erat) maxima necessitudo et plurimum audaciæ.*

*Explorata sunt.* It has been already remarked that the participle which combines with *esse* to form the passive verb agrees, as an adjective, with the subject of such verb in gender, number, and case. *Explorata* is the nominative plural, neuter gender, to agree with *ea*.

*Quæ voluit.* *Quæ* is the accusative subject of *explorari*. See Rule 7.

*Quibus erat.* See Rule 9, and Observations under it.

*Plurimum audaciæ = plurima audacia.* Rule 16.

3. *Nobilium*, governed by *juventus*, understood.

*Inceptis.* See Observation 6, under Rule 3.

*Quibus in otio.* The antecedent is *ii*, understood. The order is, "Ii quibus erat copia vivere in otio vel magnifice vel molliter malebant (habere) incerta pro certis, bellum quam pacem,"—those who had the means of living in a time of peace, either in a splendid style or luxuriously, were better pleased to have uncertainty than certainty, war than peace.

*Quibus erat.* See Rule 9, and Observations.

*Incerta.* See Rule 15.

*Qui crederent.* The antecedent is *homines*, understood, or some such word. "There were persons, at that time, who."

*Consilii.* See Rule 17.

*Invisus ipsi*—an enemy to him (Crassus).

*Voluisse*—there were persons who believed that he (Crassus) was desirous that the power of any one should increase in opposition to his (Pompey's); trusting moreover (as he did) that if the conspiracy succeeded, he himself (*se*) would become a leader among them (the conspirators).

*Confisum*, agreeing with *Crassum*.

*Principem.* See Rule 13.

*Apud illos.* There is no word immediately expressed to which



this pronoun refers; it is, however, implied in the word *conjuratio*. This is a common usage in all languages.

4. *Qui dicerent*. See note under *qui crederent* in the preceding sentences.

*Oratione habita*—the speech having been delivered, after he had delivered his speech. See Rule 14.

*Catilinam*, the subject of *circumtulisse*. Rule 7.

*Inde*. This stands immediately connected with *aperuisse*. "There were people who believed that then (*inde*) he opened, &c. when all had tasted after the imprecation."

*Atque eo*—and they likewise said that he asserted that he did so for this reason, in order that they might be more faithful one to another, being conscious, each to the other, of such a deed.

*Dicitare, fecisse, aperuisse*. The subject is *Catilinam*.

*Ficta hæc*. *Hæc*, for *has res*; and *multa*, for *multas res*, the subject of *ficta (esse)*.

*Ciceronis invidiam*—the odium under which Cicero laboured.

*Pœnas dederant*—had suffered punishment.

5. *His rebus comparatis*. See Rule 14.

*Si designatus foret*—if he could become consul elect.

*Facile se*—that he would easily use Antony according to his will, make what use he liked of him.

*Usurum (esse) Antonio*. See Observation 6, Rule 3.

*Illi tamen*—Cicero.

*Per Fulviam*—by making many promises through the agency of Fulvia. See Rules 30 and 6.

*Ad hoc*—moreover, in addition to this.

*Ne sentiret*. *Ne* here is equivalent to *ut non*. "That he should not feel disposed against, side against, the commonwealth." Observe, *republicam* is compounded of the noun *res*, and the adjective *publica*, both being declined according to their own declension.

*Extrema omnia*. See Rule 15.

6. *Ceteris*. See Rule 14.

*Eques, senator*. See Observation 10, under Rule 5.

*Constituere*. See Observation 1, under Rule 1.

*Ea nocte*. Governed by *in*, understood.

*Quantum periculi*. See Rule 16.

*Consuli impendat*. Observation 6, Rule 3. *Im* is a modification of *in*.

*Sollicitare*—stirred up. Historians frequently use the infinitive for the past indicative.

*Egestate, dolore*. See Rule 6.

*Novarum rerum*—new things, a revolution. Governed by *cupidam*. See Rule 17.

7. *Nos cepisse*—that we have taken. Rule 7.

*Homini*—that we may offer danger to any man, expose any man to danger.

*Qui miseri.* *Qui* is the subject of *sumus*, and takes its number and person, not from an immediate antecedent, but from the possessive *nostra* in the preceding clause, *our bodies* being equivalent to *the bodies of us*. This is a usage of the English as well as the Latin language. Of this the following are examples: “In the general warfare of the age, the advantage was on *their* side, *who* were most commonly the assailants.”—*Gibbon*.

“In the same year was published my ‘Inquiry,’ which, in *my own* opinion, *who* ought not to judge on that subject, is, of all my writings, incomparably the best.”—*Hume*.

“That our bodies may be protected from harm (the bodies of us), who, wretched, needy, are destitute, through the harsh treatment and cruelty of usurers, most of us of our country (the privileges of citizenship), but all of our characters and fortunes.” *Patriæ, fama, fortunis*, are all, though differing in case, governed by *expertes*. See Rule 20.

*Licuit*—nor was it lawful for any of us to take the benefit of the law, agreeably to the custom of our ancestors. The subject of this verb is the whole of the following clause.

*Uti lege.* See Observation 6, under Rule 3.

*More.* See Rule 6.

*Amisso patrimonio.* See Rule 14.

8. *Cuidam*—to one Publius Umbrenus. See Rule 24.

*Existimans.* The order is, “*Existimans eos oppressos ære alieno publice privatimque facile posse adduci ad tale consilium, quod gens Gallica bellicosa esset natura.*”

*Eos*—that they being overwhelmed. The subject of *posse*. See Rule 7.

*Ære alieno*—with debt; literally, “other men’s brass.” This is governed by *oppressos*. See Rule 14.

*Publice privatimque*—publicly and privately, *i. e.* their state, and they themselves individually, were overwhelmed with debt.

*Ad tale consilium.* The preposition is often repeated before the governed word, as here. See Rule 26. \*

*Natura*—by nature. Rule 6.

*Quod in Gallia negotiatus (erat)*—because he had carried on business in Gaul.

*In eo*—in it, the senate.

*Nihil auxilii*—nothing of aid, no aid.

*Uti sui misereretur*—that he would take pity on them. See Observation 6, Rule 3.

*Nihil tam asperum*—saying (understood) that nothing was so

disagreeable, nor so difficult, but that they would most anxiously do it, provided, &c.

*Quod foro*—because it (the house) was near the forum, and not unacquainted with the plot. In this latter clause the house, by a common figure of speech, is put for the inhabitants. *Consilii* is governed by *aliena* on the principle laid down in Rule 17.

*Quo major auctoritas*—in order that a greater weight would attach to his words. For the syntax of *sermoni*, see Observation 6, under Rule 3.

*Eo præsentē*—he (Gabinus) being present, in his presence. Rule 14.

*Eos pollicitos*—then he dismisses them, having promised (after they had first promised) their assistance.

9. *Dicendi finem*. See Rule 30.

*Ceteri verbo*—the rest assented in support of different opinions (*varie*) one to one speaker, another to another (*alius adsentiebatur alii*). *Ceteri verbo* is opposed to *Marcus Cato* and *oratio*.

*Rogatus sententiam*. See Rule 25.

10. *In sententiam discessit*—voted according to the opinion of Cato. *Discedere in sententiam alicujus* means “to agree with any one’s opinion,” and is a phraseology adopted on account of the habit of senators going to the same side of the house who agreed in opinion.

*Optimum factum ratus*—believing it (to be) the best deed (he could do) to anticipate the night which was coming on, *i. e.* to do what was to be done.

*Quod Tullianum*. The more natural antecedent is *locus*, in which case the relative would be *qui*. When however the relative is placed between two nouns agrees of different genders, it sometimes, as here with *Tullianum*, with the latter.

*Ad lævam*. Supply *manum*.

*Quibus præceptum erat*—those persons to whom such command had been issued, &c.

*Moribus, factis*. See Rule 21.

11. *Cum expeditis*. Supply *militibus*, light-armed troops.

*Versari*. The historical infinitive for *versabatur*.

*Laborantibus succurrere*—brought succours to those in distress. See Observation 6, Rule 3.

*Omnia providere*—took all possible precautions.

*Memor generis*. See Rule 17.

12. *Manifestus*—being clearly guilty of.

*Prius—quam*. These particles are connected in translation: “Did not give up struggling against the truth until.”

*Supra gratiam*—beyond the influence of his money; literally, “beyond his influence and his money.” This is a species of

Hendiadys ; a mode of expression usual, especially in the poets, whereby one thing is represented as two.

*Parendi sibi.* See Rule 30, and Observation 6, Rule 3.

*Italia decedere.* See Rule 26, which also explains the syntax of *Roma* in the next passage.

*Perituram.* Supply *esse*. The future infinitive.

13. *Acceptit.* The object is *ea*, the antecedent of *quæ*, the object of *agebat*.

*Diffidere suis rebus.* See Observation 6, Rule 3.

*Ipsi liberis vitam.* See Rule 24.

*Experimentis.* See Rule 6.

*Cognitum erat genus esse infidum*—it had been already known to Metellus by experience that the nation (family) of the Numidians was treacherous, (a nation) of a fickle disposition, and fond of change. The subject of *cognitum erat* is the sentence.

*Genus*, the accusative subject of *esse*.

*Ingenio mobili.* See the foregoing translation, and Observation 11, Rule 5. *Genus* is understood.

*Novarum rerum.* Rule 17.

*Tentando.* See Rules 6 and 30.

*Opportunos*—fit for his purpose.

*Pollicendo.* Rules 6 and 30.

*Jugurtham sibi traderent.* Rule 24.

*Maxime vivum*—alive especially ; that is, if possible.

*Nunciari.* The subject is *ea*, the antecedent of *quæ*. "He orders that such an answer should be openly given to the king as would be according to his (the king's) pleasure;" as would please him.

14. *Amat*—loves, *i. e.* is wont.

*Ictu.* See Rule 10, and Sentences 23, 24, 25, given by way of illustration under it.

15. *Divis orte.* See Rule 27.

*Pollicitus*, agreeing with *tu*, the subject of *abes*.

*Instar veris*—your countenance like the spring.

*Ut mater*—as a mother with vows, omens, and prayers calls for her youthful son, whom the south wind with adverse gales (*invido flatu*) detains from his sweet home, staying longer than a year (*annuo spatio*) beyond the waters of the Carpathian sea, nor turns her gaze from the curved shore ; in like manner his country, inspired with loyal wishes, seeks for Cæsar.

*Rura perambulat.* See Rule 26.

*Culpari metuit Fides*—honour is afraid of being blamed, *i. e.* does nothing worthy of censure.

*Scythen*, the accusative singular after a Greek declension. "The frozen Scythian."



*Incolumi Cæsare.* See Rule 14.

*Condit diem*—finishes his days in his own hills. This is stated as one of the effects of peace.

*Et vitem viduas*—and marries the vine to the widowed trees; pursues the peaceful avocation of agriculture.

*Alteris mensis*—and invites you as a deity to his second course.

*Defuso pateris.* See Rule 26.

*Uti Græcia.* This is the subject of *miscuit*, understood.

*Castoris Herculis memor*—mindful of, *i. e.* grateful to. See Rule 17.

*Ferias Hespericæ.* See Rule 24.

*Dicimus integro*—we pray (say so) this, fresh and fasting (*sicci*, agreeing with *nos*, the subject of *dicimus*), the day being whole (the ablative absolute), no part being taken therefrom, *i. e.* early in the morning.

16. *Quam neque finitimi.* The order is, “(Nos) impia ætas devoti sanguinis perdemus (Romam) quam neque,” &c.—(We) an impious age of devoted blood will ruin that Rome which, &c.

*Novisque*—and the Gauls faithless (which they show) by revolutions. *Novis rebus* is the expression of the manner. See Rule 6.

*Dissipabit*—will insolently scatter the bones of Romulus, which want (are now free from the influence of) wind and sun.

*Carent ventis.* See Rule 20.

*Forte quid expediat*—perchance the whole of you, or the better part, are asking what may be expedient (in order) to avoid (*carere*) these destructive evils.

*Carere laboribus.* See Rule 20.

*Nulla sit*—no opinion can be preferable to (better than) this (opinion). See Rule 10, and Sentences 23, 24, 25.

*Velut profugit*—in like manner as the state of the Phocæans fled, having uttered execrations (against such as should return), and left their fields, the homes of their fathers, and temples, to be inhabited by boars and ravenous wolves.

*Habitanda apris—lupis.* See Rule 19.

17. *Qui fit*—how does it happen? The sentence is the subject of this verb, and *qui* is the ablative expressive of the means. See Rule 6.

*Ut nemo, quam*—that no one lives contented with that lot which either reason may have given him, or chance thrown in his way. *Sortem* is out of its own clause: this is a species of attraction common to the Greek language. The order should be, “*Ut nemo vivat contentus illa sorte, quam seu ratio dederit, seu fors objecerit sibi.*”



*Quam ratio dederit sibi.* See Rule 24.

*Contentus illa sorte.* See Rule 21.

*Laudet diversa sequentes*—that (every one) commends (men) following different (pursuits, *negotia*). See Rule 15.

*Gravis annis*—borne down with years. Rule 6.

*Fractus membra*—broken in (as to) his limbs. See Rule 29.

*Mercator*, the subject of *ait*, understood.

*Navim*, the old form of the accusative for *navem*.

*Jactantibus Austris*, ablative absolute. Rule 14.

*Concurritur*—men engage. This is a specimen of what is called a verb impersonal. All active verbs may assume this form, their subject being changed into the ablative governed by *a* or *ab*. See Rule 8, and Explanation 2 attached thereto. Of this the following examples will suffice:—

ENGLISH.	ACTIVE VERB.	IMPERSONAL.
<i>Men engage,</i>	Homines concurrunt,	Concurritur ab hominibus.
<i>We hear,</i>	Nos audimus,	Auditur a nobis.
<i>They read,</i>	Illi legunt,	Legitur ab illis.
<i>They have gone,</i>	Illi iverunt,	Itum est ab illis.

*Note.*—The impersonal verb is always in the third singular, and in that tense which the personal verb would be expressed in.

*Juris, legum peritus.* See Rule 17.

*Sub galli cantum*—at cockcrow.

*Rure extractus.* See Rule 26.

*Datis vadibus*—having given bail. Ablative absolute.

18. *Roma*, governed by *egressum*. Rule 26.

*Hospitio modico*—in an indifferent inn.

*Heliodorus*, the subject of *fuit*, understood.

*Rhetor.* See Observation 10, Rule 5.

*Linguæ doctissimus.* See Rule 17.

*Forum Appi.* Appii Forum, the name of a place. *Appi* is contracted or syncopated for *Appii*. This is the subject of *excepit*, understood.

*Differtum nautis.* See Rule 20.

*Hoc iter*—we, being lazy, made two of this journey, (which is but one) for persons better prepared (girded higher) than we.

*Minus est*—the Appian Way is less troublesome to bad travellers.

*Quod erat*—because it was.

*Ventri indico bellum*—proclaim war on my stomach, *i. e.* deny it the luxury of water. See Rule 24.

*Exspectans*—awaiting with impatience (*haud æquo animo*) my companions (whilst) supping.

*Diffundere signa*—to display the stars.

*Ingerere*, the infinitive for the imperfect tense.

*Missæ pastum*—let loose to feed. Rule 28.

19. *Patre libertino*. See Rule 27.

*Mihi pareret tribuno*. Observation 6, Rule 3, and Observation 10, Rule 5.

*Hoc illi*—this (last-named reason) is unlike the former. *Hic* and *ille* refer, the former to the nearer, the latter to that more remote.

*Cantum*, agreeing with *te*. *Dignos*, equivalent to *tantum dignos*, "but those that are worthy."

*Priva ambitione procul*—depraved ambition being far removed from you; that is, you have no sinister motives in patronizing those whom you admit to your friendship.

*Hoc quod te sortitus*—I cannot pronounce myself happy on this account, because I obtained you as a friend *by chance*. Understand *sum* with *sortitus*.

*Singultim*—in a broken, interrupted manner.

20. *Nescio quid*—thinking on I know not what trifle.

*Quid nugarum*. See Rule 16.

*Arreptaque manu*—and having seized my hand, (he says, *inquit*) What thing are you doing (How do you do), my dearest friend?

*Quid rerum*. See Rule 16.

*Arrepta manu*, ablative absolute.

*Suaviter ut*—pretty well as matters are now, and I wish you may have what you desire, *i. e.* I wish you the same: *cupio ut habeas omnia quæ vis habere*.

*Numquid vis? occupo*—I am beforehand in asking, Do you want any thing? But he replies, That you may know me, we are learned, *i. e.* I am a man of letters. The busybody speaks of himself in the first person plural, as being, in his own estimation, of some importance.

*Nil agis*—you do nothing, *i. e.* 'tis no use for you.

*Iter est tibi?*—whither are you going hence? See Rule 9, and Sentences 19, 20, 21, 22, illustrative thereof.

*Cum gravius*—when a heavier load than usual comes on (is put on) his back.

21. *Ultra legem*—beyond the law which obtains in such matters.

*Similes meorum*. Adjectives of likeness sometimes are found with a genitive. See Rule 18. Grammarians make this distinction: the dative expresses the external appearance; the genitive the disposition and character in which the similarity exists.

*Deduci*—spun out; opposed to the art of good composition.

*Trebatî*. See Note 2, under Declension 2.

*Quiescas*—you must be quiet: the answer of Trebatius. The following is a dialogue between him and Horace.

*Ne faciam = ut non faciam*—do you say that I am not to compose verses at all?

*Tiberim.* See Rule 26.

*Somno quibus.* Rule 9, and Sentences 19, 20, 21, 22.

*Sub noctem* properly signifies “at the approach of night:” *sub*, signifying “approach to,” governs an accusative. Here the expression is equivalent to our “over night.”

*Amor scribendi.* Rule 30.

*Laturus*—about to receive, *i. e.* sure to receive; agreeing with *tu*, the subject of *aude*.

*Cupidum*, agreeing with *me*, the object of *deficiunt*.

*Gallos pereuntes*—the Gauls perishing with the spear broken in them.

*Labentis equo*—falling from his horse.

*Attamen et justum*—nevertheless you may describe him just and brave, as the wise Lucilius (described) Scipio.

*Res ipsa feret*—an occasion itself, a real opportunity will offer itself.

*Flacci*, one of the names of Horace.

*Cui male si*, a metaphor taken from the stable.

22. *Sudando.* See Rules 6 and 30.

23. *Pauper argenti.* Rule 20.

*Multum celer*—a man of much energy of character.

*Men' vivo? Mene vivo?*—is it whilst I am alive? *Ne*, an interrogative particle; “whether I being alive,” the ablative absolute.

*Vigila*—be on your guard.

*Accedat stomacho.* Observation 6, Rule 3.

*Quanti, parvo, octussibus.* Consult Rule 31.

24. *Si quid monitoris*—if you want an adviser in any respect. *Quid* is the accusative neuter, governed by *secundum* or *quoad*. See Rule 29. For the syntax of *monitoris*, consult Rule 20.

*Quid sæpe*—often consider what you say, of what man you say it, and to whom.

*Incutiant pudorem tibi.* Consult Rule 24.

25. *Haud nequicquam*—with good reason.

*Dum bello*—whilst the Grecian kings were devastating in war Pergamus (Troy), due (to them by fate).

*Ergo eadem*—therefore I, the same, (now) come a suppliant, and ask you, a divinity sacred to me (in my eyes), for arms.

*Rogo te arma.* Consult Rule 25.

*Genitrix nato.* “Ego genitrix rogo te arma nato.”

26. *Quæ gloria.* *Gloria* is out of its proper clause; it should

be *gloriam*, the object of *expediam*: this is a species of attraction already explained. The order is, "Nunc age, expediam dictis gloriam quæ deinde sequatur Dardanium prolem, nepotes qui maneant (nos) de Itala gente, illustres animas, que (animas) ituras in nostrum nomen."

*Te tua fata docebo.* Rule 25.

27. *Mihi opus est amicitia.* Rules 5, Observation 12, and 9, Sentences 19, 20, 21, 22.

*Quod te rogo.* The antecedent is *id*, the object of *facis*. For the syntax of *quod* and *te*, consult Rule 25.

*Oporteat.* The subject is the whole clause in which it stands.

28. *Bellum Romanis intulit.* Rule 24.

*Amicis gratulantibus*, ablative absolute.

*Honestis vulneribus*—with wounds in their breast.

*Imperio potiri.* Observation 6, Rule 3.

*Mihi erat habenti.* The latter agrees with *mihi*, "for me having," *i. e.* if I had.

*Tarentum, in Græciam.* Consult Rule 34.

29. *Æthera.* The accusative of *æther*, after a Greek declension.

*Os, humeros Deo similis.* Rules 18 and 29.

*Ipsa genitrix*—his mother herself, Venus.

*Afflârat*, for *afflaverat*.

30. *Romæ.* Rule 32.

*Comperta*, supply *sunt*.

*Sine fraude*—with impunity, *i. e.* with the assurance of safety.

*Condemnatis.* The syntax of this is the same as that of *multitudini*, governed with *diem* by *statuit*. "They appoint a day for the rest of the multitude, except," *i. e.* it does not so appoint a day for those convicted of capital offences.

*Rerum capitalium.* See Rule 23.

31. *In Africam.* Rule 34.

32. *Romæ, Numidiæ.* Rule 32.

33. *Tentanda*, supply *esse*—that the seas are to be (must be) attempted in flight.

*Argis.* Consult Rule 33.

34. *Carthagine.* Rule 33.

*Defer.* Imperative, second singular of *fero*. Three other verbs omit the *e* in the same part: these are, *facio*, *dico*, *duco*.

35. *Nunciatum est.* The subject is *lapides cecidisse*.

*Visi*, supply *sunt*—they appeared to hear a voice (directing them).

*Quæ oblivioni.* See Rule 24.

*Fortunæ*, governed by *irati*—incensed at fortune, as it usually happens in such cases (*ut fit*). See Observation 6, Rule 3.



*Haud ita multo post*—not very long after.

*Laboratum est (a Romanis)*—the Romans were attacked. They laboured, literally: the verb impersonal, equivalent to *Romani laboraverunt*. See Note and illustrations on this form of the verb under Sentence 17 of the foregoing.

*Pigritia militandi*—a disinclination to military service. Rule 30.

*Militiæ quam domi*—in war than in peace. See Note under Rule 32.

*Obnoxius degeret*—became a slave to.

36. *Curibus*—at Cures. See Rule 33.

*Consultissimus juris*. See Rule 17.

37. *Cumis*—Cumæ, the residence of the celebrated Sibyl. See Rule 33.

38. *Dissimiles veris*, supply *speluncis*, and see Rule 18. *Veris*—the natural caves.

39. *Romæ*. See Rule 32.

40. *Tanti*. See Rule 31. "Let not all the sand of the Tagus be of so much value in your estimation that (for it) you should want sleep, and accept rewards to be (which ought to be) rejected, and be always the object of suspicion by a friend in power."

*Somno careas*. Rule 20.

*A magno timearis amico*. Note 2, under Rule 8, and Sentences 13, 14, &c. illustrative thereof.

41. *Romæ*. Rule 32.

*Numinis*—the host of the Idæan deity. This was Scipio Nasica, adjudged to be one of the best of men. He was deemed the most worthy to receive the image of the Goddess Cybele into his house, till a temple should be built for it. She was called *Idæa*, from Ida, a hill in Phrygia, whence her worship was introduced to Rome.

*Numa*—the first king who civilized the Romans, remarkable for his uprightness.

*Vel qui*—Lucius Metellus, who preserved the Palladium, the image of Minerva, when it stood, as it were, trembling for its safety, the temple in which it was being on fire.

*Protinus ad censum*—the first inquiry will be as to his income.

*Quantum nummorum, tantum fidei*. Rule 16.

42. *Agmine facto*, ablative absolute.

*Migrâsse*, syncopated for *migravisse*.

*Quorum virtutibus obstat domi*. For the syntax of *quorum*, see Note under Rule 12, and Rule 5; for *virtutibus*, Observation 6, Rule 3; and for *domi*, Note under Rule 32.



*Romæ conatus.* The latter is the subject of *est*, understood. For the syntax of *Romæ*, see Rule 32.

*Hospitium, cœnula, ventres,* the subjects respectively of *constat* and *constant*, understood.

*Magno*, the ablative governed by the preceding verbs. Rule 31.

43. *Plena malis.* See Rule 20.

*Pulchrior ille hoc*—this one is fairer than that. *Hoc*; for the syntax, see Rule 10, and Examples 23, 24, and 25, illustrative thereof.

*Frangendus misero*—and bread must be broken by the poor wretch with a toothless gum.

*Misero frangendus.* See Rule 19.

*Captatori Cosso.* See Observations 9 and 10, Rule 5.

44. *Nil ergo*—the language of an objector.

*Conveniat nobis.* Observation 6, Rule 3.

*Dī*, syncopated for *Divi*, the nominative plural of *Divus*.

*Impulsu, cupidine.* Rule 6.

*Notum*, supply *est*. The subject is the following.

*Qui pueri*—what sort the children will turn out (*futuri sint*).

*Orandum est.* The subject is the following clause.

*Ut sit*—that we may have. Supply *nobis*, and consult Rule 9, and Observations 19, 20, &c. explanatory thereof.

*Terrore carentem.* Rule 20.

*Qui ponat*—which can reckon.

*Potiore venere, cœnis, plumis.* Consult Rule 10, and Sentences 23, 24, 25, illustrative thereof.

*Si sit prudentia*, supply *nobis*. See Note under *ut sit*, above.

45. *Incredibile memoratu.* See Rule 28.

*Adepta libertate*, ablative absolute.

*Laboris patiens*—able to endure labour. With an accusative this adjective signifies actually enduring.

*Lubidinem habebant*—took pleasure.

*Domi, militiæ.* Note under Rule 32.

*Legibus, natura.* Rule 6.

46. *Recitatae*, supply *sunt*—a letter was read. In the plural number *literæ*, or *litteræ*, as here, signifies “an epistle;” in the singular *litera* signifies “a letter of the alphabet.”

*Mea culpa*, the ablative of the cause. Rule 6. “Not through my fault I send.” “It is not through my fault that I send” is more agreeable to the usage of the English language.

*Oratum.* See Rule 28.

*Lubido extinguendi.* See Rule 30.

*In animo habeat*—regards.

*Malit.* Supply *uti* from the preceding clause, and *habere* to govern *sanguinem* and *omnia*, and, in reference to the latter, consult Rule 15.

47. *Diis auspiciibus*—under the auspices of the gods; literally, “by the gods as the authors.”

*Diis*, for *Divis*, and *Junone* are the ablatives of the cause, and *vento* of the instrument, governed by *tenuisse*. Consult Rule 6.

*Quam tu urbem*—what a city will you see this!

*Teucrûm*, syncopated for *Teucrorum*.

*Posce deos veniam*. Consult Rule 25.

*Causas morandi*. Rule 30.

*Orion, cœlum, rates*, the subjects respectively of *est* and *sunt*, understood.

48. *Justitia vacat*. See Rule 20.

*In vitio est*—is at fault, *i. e.* is a crime.

*Non enim modo*—for not only does it not belong to virtue.

*Virtutis, immanitatis*. Consult Rule 22.

49. *Quis desiderio*—what feeling of shame should there be, or moderation, for the regret of so dear a person, *i. e.* in regretting.

*Capitis*—the head. By synecdoche for the individual.

*Cui parem*. Consult Rule 18.

*Bonis flebilis*. Rule 19.

*Nulli flebilior quam tibi*. Rule 19.

*Frustra pius*—affectionate to no purpose.

*Non ita creditum*—not entrusted to you on such conditions, *i. e.* to live for ever.

*Poscis Quinctilium deos*. Rule 25.

50. *Otium divos rogat*. Rule 25.

*Prensus*—a person caught in the wide Ægean sea. Supply *mari*.

*Gemmis, purpura, auro venale*. Consult Rule 31.

51. *Dementis est*—is the part of a madman. Rule 22.

*Subvenire tempestati*. Observation 6, Rule 3.

*Sapientis*, supply *est*, and see Rule 22.

52. *Tenacem propositi*—firm in the execution of his purpose. See Rule 19.

53. *Ad impetrandum*—to obtain my request.

*Nihil causæ*—nothing of a cause, no cause.

*Erat majestatis*, in the sense of *esset*. See Rule 22. “It would belong to the majesty.”

*His finibus ejectus sum*. See Rule 26.

*Quos majoribus dedit*. Rule 24.

54. *Parentes*—subjects, persons obeying.

*Extremæ dementiæ est*. Rule 22.

55. *Causa his*—the cause of these things. See Observation 9, Rule 5.

*Flavi*, syncopated for *Flavii*.

*Portare Romam*. Consult Rule 34.

*Docendum artes*—to be taught those accomplishments. *Docendum* agrees with *me puerum*, the object of *portare*. For the syntax of *artes*, consult Rule 25.

*Quas eques quivis doceat prognatos semet*—which any knight might teach (those) sprung from himself, his children. For the syntax of *quas*, *prognatos*, consult Rule 25, and Note under Rule 12; and for *semet*, Rule 27.

# DICTIONARY OF THE WORDS

IN THE

## FOREGOING SENTENCES.

### A.

A, ad, prep., *from, by.*

abduco, xi, ctum, 3, *I lead away.*

abeo, ivi, itum, irr., *I go away, I depart.*

abominor, abominatus, abominari, dep., *I detest.*

absum, abfui, abesse, irr., *I am absent, I am distant.*

ac, conj., *and.*

accedo, essi, essum, 3, *I go to, accede, acquiesce.*

accendo, di, sum, 3, *I set on fire, burn, excite.*

accipio, epi, eptum, 3, *I receive, take, accept.*

accitus, us, 4, m., *a call, invitation.*

accurro, ri, rsum, 3, *I run to, hasten.*

accuso, avi, atum, 1, *I accuse, blame.*

acer, ris, e, *sharp, sour, swift, active, fierce.*

acervus, i, 2, m., *a heap.*

acies, ei, 5, f., *an edge or point, an army in battle array.*

actio, onis, 3, f., *an action, a suit or process at law.*

actus, a, um, part. of ago, *done, performed.*

acuo, ui, 3, *I sharpen, excite, provoke.*

ad, prep., *to, towards.*

addo, didi, ditum, 3, *I give to, add.*

adduco, xi, ctum, 3, *I lead to, bring, induce.*

adeo, adv., *so, therefore, very much.*

adeo, ivi and ii, itum, *I go, come to, address.*

adeptus, part. of adipiscor, *having obtained.*

adgredior, same as aggredior.

Adherbal, alis, 3, m., *Adherbal.*

adhibeo, ui, itum, 2, *I apply, admit, send for.*

ad hoc, adv., *in addition to this, moreover.*

adipiscor, eptus sum, pisci, dep., *I obtain, get.*

adjungo, nxi, nctum, 3, *I add, join to.*

admiror, ratus sum, mirari, dep., *I admire, wonder at.*

adopto, tavi, tatum, 1, *I adopt.*

adpello, avi, atum, 1, *I call, name, address.*

Adria, æ, 1, f., *the Adriatic Sea.*

adsedeo, edi, sessum, 2, *I sit by, close to.*

adsentior, iri, nsus, dep., *I assent or agree to, comply.*

adsum, fui, esse, *I am present.*

adveho, xi, ctum, 3, *I bring to, convey.*

adverto, ti, sum, 3, *I turn to, direct, apply.*

adversus, a, um, part. of adverto.



- adversus, prep., *opposite to, against.*  
 Æacidas, æ, 1, m., *Achilles, the grandson of Æacus.*  
 ædes, is, 3, f., *a house, building, temple.*  
 Ægæus, a, um, *of or belonging to the Ægean Sea.*  
 Ægeria, æ, 1, f., *the name of a goddess.*  
 ægroto, 1, *I am sick.*  
 æmulus, a, um, *emulous, vying with.*  
 Æneas, æ, 1, m., *Æneas.*  
 æqualis, e, *equal.*  
 æquitas, tatis, 3, f., *equity, justice.*  
 æquor, oris, 3, n., *the sea, the smooth surface of any thing.*  
 æquus, a, um, *equal, just, even.*  
 æratus, a, um, *made of brass.*  
 ærumna, æ, 1, f., *trouble, sorrow, misery.*  
 æs, ris, 3, n., *brass.*  
 ætas, atis, 3, f., *age.*  
 æternum, adv., *for ever.*  
 æternus, a, um, *eternal, everlasting.*  
 æther, ris, 3, m., *the sky, firmament, heaven.*  
 afflo, avi, atum, 1, *I blow, breathe upon.*  
 affulgeo, si, sum, 2, *I shine upon, favour.*  
 Africa, æ, 1, f., *Africa.*  
 Africus, i, m., *the south-west wind.*  
 age! } interj., *come on!*  
 agedum! }  
 agellus, i, 2, m., *a little field.*  
 ager, i, 2, m., *a field, garden.*  
 aggredior, ssus sum v. fui, edi, dep., *I come up to, accost, attack.*  
 agilis, e, *nimble, active.*  
 agito, avi, atum, 1, *I agitate, revolve, consider.*  
 agmen, inis, 3, n., *a body of men, an army in line of march, a number of men, a herd.*  
 ago, egi, actum, 3, *I do, act, transact.*  
 agricola, æ, 1, m., *a husbandman.*  
 ahenum, i, 2, n., *a brass pot, caldron.*
- aiο, defect., *I say.* See Defective Verbs.  
 ala, æ, 1, f., *a wing.*  
 Albanus, a, um, *Alban.*  
 Albanus, i, 2, m., *an Alban.*  
 alibi, adv., *in another place, elsewhere.*  
 alienus, a, um, *what belongs to another, strange, improper.*  
 aliquis, a, aliquid or aliquod, *some one, somebody.*  
 aliquot, pl., indecl. adj., *some, a few.*  
 aliter, adv., *in another way, otherwise.*  
 alius, a, ud, *another, different.*  
 Allobrox, ogis, 3, m. and f., *an Allobrogian, an inhabitant of Savoy.*  
 alloquor, cutus sum, qui, dep., *I address, speak to.*  
 almus, a, um, *kind, bountiful.*  
 alte, adv., *highly.*  
 alter, era, erum, *another.*  
 altum, i, 2, n., *the deep.*  
 altus, a, um, *high.*  
 alvus, i, 2, m. and f., *the belly, the inside of a thing.*  
 amator, oris, 3, m., *a lover.*  
 ambages, ambagibus (its only cases), 3, f., *a turning, winding, circumlocution, a tedious story.*  
 ambigue, adv., *in a doubtful manner.*  
 ambitio, onis, 3, f., *ambition.*  
 ambo, æ, o, *both.* See Declension of Adjectives.  
 amicitia, æ, 1, f., *friendship.*  
 amicus, i, 2, m., *a friend.*  
 amicus, a, um, *friendly.*  
 amitto, isi, ssum, 3, *I lose, I let go, omit.*  
 amo, avi, atum, 1, *I love.*  
 amplector, xus sum, ti, dep., *I embrace.*  
 amplexus, a, um, *having embraced* (part. of amplector).  
 amplus, a, um, *large, ample.*  
 anceps, cipitis, *doubtful, dangerous, deceitful.*

**anchora**, æ, 1, f., *an anchor.*  
**angustus**, a, um, *narrow, small, poor.*  
**anima**, æ, 1, f., *the soul, life, breath.*  
**animadverto**, ti, sum, 3, *I observe, perceive, punish.*  
**animus**, i, 2, m., *the mind, spirit, courage, disposition.*  
**Annibal**, alis, 3, m., *Hannibal.*  
**annus**, i, 2, m., *the year.*  
**annuus**, a, um, *yearly, belonging to the year, happening once a year.*  
**ante**, prep., *before.*  
**antea**, adv., *before, formerly.*  
**antecapio**, cepi, ceptum, 3, *I take beforehand, anticipate.*  
**anterior**, us, adj., comp., *former, in front.*  
**Antonius**, ii, 2, m., *Anthony.*  
**antrum**, i, 2, n., *a cave.*  
**aperio**, ui, rtum, 4, *I open, disclose.*  
**apertus**, a, um, part. of **aperio**, *opened.*  
**Apollo**, inis, 3, m., *Apollo.*  
**appelle!** adv. of ejaculation, *hither!*  
*huc appelle! come hither!*  
**appello**, avi, atum, 1, *I call, name, call to, accuse.*  
**appello**, puli, pulsum, 3, *I drive, force, apply.*  
**Appius**, ii, 2, m., *Appius.*  
**Appius**, a, um, *of or belonging to Appius.*  
**apto**, avi, atum, 1, *I fit, make fit, adapt.*  
**aptus**, a, um, *fit, adapted.*  
**apud**, prep., *close by, near to, with, among.*  
**aqua**, æ, 1, f., *water.*  
**Aquarius**, ii, 2, m., *one of the signs of the zodiac.*  
**aquosus**, a, um, *watery, wet.*  
**arator**, toris, 3, m., *a ploughman.*  
**aratrum**, i, 2, n., *a plough.*  
**arbor**, oris, 3, f., *a tree.*  
**arca**, æ, 1, f., *a chest, coffer.*  
**Arcadius**, a, um, *of or belonging to an Arcadian.*  
**arcesso**, sivi, situm, 3, *I send for, call, invite.*

**ardens**, ntis, part. of **ardeo**, *burning.*  
**ardeo**, rsi, rsum, 2, *I burn, desire greatly, burn with rage.*  
**ardor**, oris, 3, m., *a burning, great desire.*  
**arena**, æ, 1, f., *sand, an arena.*  
**argentum**, i, n., *silver.*  
**Argolicus**, a, um, *of or belonging to Argos, Grecian.*  
**Argos**, eos, n. (declined like a Greek noun; but **Argi**, **Argorum**, pl. m.), *Argos.*  
**Aricia**, æ, 1, f., *the name of a city or town.*  
**arma**, orum, pl., 2, n., *arms, implements.*  
**armatus**, a, um, part. of **armo**, *armed.*  
**armo**, avi, atum, 1, *I arm.*  
**arripio**, pui, ptum, 3, *I snatch at, seize, take by force.*  
**ars**, tis, 3, f., *an art, trade; art, artifice, cunning.*  
**aruspex**, icis, 3, m., *a soothsayer.*  
**arx**, rcis, 3, f., *a citadel.*  
**ascendo**, di, nsum, 3, *I ascend.*  
**asellus**, i, 2, m., *a little ass.*  
**asina**, æ, 1, f., *a she-ass.*  
**aspecto**, avi, atum, 1, *I look at, have a view of.*  
**asper**, era, erum, *rough, harsh, ill-natured.*  
**aspicio**, exi, ectum, 3, *I behold, see, perceive, regard.*  
**assector**, tatus sum, tari, dep., *I attend, wait upon, follow.*  
**assumo**, mpsi, mptum, 3, *I assume, take, admit.*  
**astrum**, i, 2, n., *a star.*  
**astutia**, æ, 1, f., *craft, cunning.*  
**at**, conj., *but.*  
**ater**, ra, rum, *black, mournful, fatal.*  
**Atheniensis**, e, *belonging to an Athenian.*  
**Atheniensis**, is, 3, m. or f., *an Athenian.*  
**atque**, conj., *and.*  
**atrocitas**, tatis, 3, f., *atrocitiy, cruelty.*

atrox, ocis, adj., *atrocious, cruel*.  
 attamen, conj., *but, but yet, nevertheless*.  
 attentus, a, um, *attentive, careful*.  
 attollo, tuli, 3, *I raise or lift up*.  
 auctor, oris, 3, m., *an author, the doer of a thing, an adviser*.  
 auctoritas, tatis, 3, f., *authority*.  
 audacia, æ, 1, f., *boldness, courage, impudence*.  
 audax, acis, *bold, courageous, impudent*.  
 audeo, ausus sum, 2, *I dare, am bold*.  
 audio, ivi, itum, 4, *I hear*.  
 aufero, abstuli, ablatum (irr. compound of fero), *I take or carry off*.  
 aura, æ, 1, f., *air, breath, favour*.  
 aureus, a, um, *golden, valuable*.  
 auricula, æ, 1, f., *the ear*.  
 auris, is, 3, f., *the ear*.  
 aurum, i, 2, n., *gold*.  
 auspex, picis, 3, m., *a soothsayer, diviner*.  
 Auster, tri, 2, m., *the south wind*.  
 aut, conj., *or, either*.  
 autem, conj., *but, however*.  
 auxilium, ii, 2, n., *help, assistance*.  
 avaritia, æ, 1, f., *avarice*.  
 avertō, ti, rsum, 3, *I turn off, turn away, avert*.  
 avidus, a, um, *greedy, desirous*.

## B.

barbarus, a, um, *barbarous*.  
 beatus, a, um, *happy, blessed*.  
 bellicosus, a, um, *warlike*.  
 bellum, i, 2, n., *war*.  
 bene, adv., *well*.  
 beneficium, ii, 2, n., *kindness, a benefit*.  
 bis, adv., *twice*.  
 Bocchus, i, 2, m., *Bocchus*.  
 Bomilcar, ris, 3, m., *Bomilcar*.  
 bonum, i, 2, n., *goodness, virtue, equity*.  
 bonus, a, um, *good, just, equitable*.

bos, ovis, 3, m. or f., *an ox, a cow*.  
 brevi, adv., *shortly, in a short time*.  
 brevia, ium, 3, n., *fords, shallow places*.  
 brevis, e, *short, brief*.  
 Brutus, i, 2, m., *Brutus*.  
 brutus, a, um, *sluggish, inactive*.  
 bucca, æ, 1, f., *a cheek, a trumpet*.

## C.

caballus, i, 2, m., *a horse*.  
 cacumen, inis, 3, n., *a top, the highest point*.  
 cadaver, eris, 3, n., *a dead body*.  
 cado, cecidi, casum, 3, *I fall, happen*.  
 cæcus, a, um, *blind, secret, dark, obscure*.  
 cædes, is, 3, f., *slaughter, murder, death*.  
 cælestis, e, *heavenly, celestial*.  
 cæruleus, a, um, *blue, azure, sky-coloured*.  
 Cæsar, aris, 3, m., *Cæsar*.  
 cæsaries, ei, 5, f., *hair*.  
 cæterus, a, um, *the rest, the other*.  
 calceus, i, 2, m., *a shoe*.  
 Calchas, ntis, 3, m., *the name of a diviner*.  
 calidus, a, um, *warm, hot*.  
 cano, cecini, cantum, 3, *I sing, prophesy*.  
 canto, avi, atum, 1, *I sing*.  
 cantus, us, 4, m., *a song*.  
 Capenus, a, um, *Capene, Capenian*.  
 capio, cepi, ptum, 3, *I take*.  
 capitalis, e, *capital, worthy of death, deadly*.  
 captator, oris, 3, m., *a person who lies in wait, a flatterer, a sycophant*.  
 Capua, æ, 1, f., *the name of a city in Italy*.  
 caput, itis, 3, n., *the head*.  
 carcer, eris, 3, m., *a prison*.  
 careo, rui and cassus sum, carere, 2, *I want, am without*.

- carina, æ, 1, f., *the keel of a ship, a ship.*  
 carmen, inis, 3, n., *a song, verse, incantation, charm.*  
 Carpathius, a, um, *Carpathian.*  
 carpo, psi, ptum, 3, *I gather, rob, feed, calumniate.*  
 Carthaginiensis, e, *Carthaginian.*  
 Carthaginiensis, is, 3, m. or f., *a Carthaginian.*  
 Carthago, inis, 3, f., *Carthage.*  
 carus, a, um, *dear, beloved, costly.*  
 Castor, oris, 3, m., *Castor.*  
 castrum, i, 2, n., *a camp.*  
 casurus, a, um, part. of cado, *about to fall or happen.*  
 casus, us, 4, m., *a fall, chance, case, a happening.*  
 Catilina, æ, 1, m., *Catiline.*  
 Cato, onis, 3, m., *Cato.*  
 caupo, onis, 3, m., *an innkeeper.*  
 causa, æ, 1, f., *a cause, reason.*  
 cautus, a, um, *cautious, wary, prudent, safe.*  
 caveo, cavi, cautum, 2, *I take care, am on my guard.*  
 Cæcrops, opis, 3, m., *Cæcrops.*  
 cedo, ssi, ssum, 3, *I go, yield, give place to.*  
 celer, eris, *quick, active, clever.*  
 census, us, 4, m., *a census, yearly income.*  
 centurio, onis, 3, m., *a centurion.*  
 cerebrosus, a, um, *passionate.*  
 Ceres, eris, 3, f., *Ceres.*  
 cerno, crevi, cretum, 3, *I perceive, discern.*  
 certamen, inis, 3, n., *a contest.*  
 certe, adv., *certainly.*  
 certo, avi, atum, 1, *I contend.*  
 certus, a, um, *certain.*  
 cervix, icis, 3, f., *the neck.*  
 cervus, i, 2, m., *a stag.*  
 charus, a, um, *same as carus.*  
 cibarium, ii, 2, n., *meat, food.*  
 cibus, i, 2, m., *meat, food.*  
 Cicero, onis, 3, m., *Cicero.*  
 circum, prep. and adv., *about, around.*  
 circumago, egi, actum, 3, *I turn or go around.*  
 circumfero, tuli, latum (irreg. compound of fero), *I bear or carry around.*  
 circumfusus, a, um, *poured around, surrounding.*  
 Cirta, æ, 1, f., *the name of a town.*  
 cithara, æ, 1, f., *a harp.*  
 citra, prep., *on this side.*  
 citus, a, um, part., *moved, provoked.*  
 citus, a, um, *quick.*  
 civilis, e, *of a city, courteous.*  
 civis, is, 3, m. or f., *a citizen.*  
 civitas, atis, 3, f., *a state, city.*  
 clades, is, 3, f., *loss, defeat, disaster.*  
 clam, adv., *privately.*  
 clamo, avi, atum, 1, *I cry out, exclaim.*  
 clarus, a, um, *clear, well-known, illustrious.*  
 classis, is, 3, f., *a class, fleet.*  
 claudo, si, sum, 3, *I shut.*  
 clavis, is, 3, f., *a key.*  
 cliens, tis, 3, m. and f., *a client, a dependant.*  
 Cneius, ii, 2, m., *Cneius.*  
 cælum, i, 2, n., *heaven, the sky.*  
 cæna, æ, 1, f., *a supper.*  
 cæno, avi, atum, 1, *I sup.*  
 cænula, æ, 1, f., *a small supper.*  
 cæpi, verb defect., *I have begun.*  
 cognatus, a, um, *allied by blood.*  
 cognatus, i, 2, m., *a cousin.*  
 cognosco, ovi, itum, 3, *I know, learn, understand.*  
 cogo, egi, actum, 3, *I force, compel.*  
 cohors, tis, 3, f., *a cohort, troop, a company of people.*  
 collectus, a, um, part. of colligo.  
 collega, æ, 1, m. or f., *a colleague, partner, helper.*  
 colligo, legi, lectum, 3, *I collect, pluck, conclude.*  
 collis, is, 3, m., *a hill.*  
 colo, ui, ultum, 3, *I till, cultivate.*  
 columen, inis, 3, n., *support, stay, assistance.*  
 columna, æ, 1, f., *a pillar.*



- comes, itis, 3, m. or f., *a companion*.
- comitium, ii, 2, n., *an assembly, place of an assembly*.
- comitor, atus sum, dep., *I accompany*.
- commendo, avi, atum, 1, *I commend, entrust*.
- commissus, a, um, part. of committo.
- committo, isi, issum, 3, *I commit, entrust, engage in battle*.
- commodo, avi, atum, 1, *I lend, fit, adapt, profit*.
- commodum, i, 2, n., *advantage, benefit*.
- communis, e, *common, what belongs to several*.
- communiter, adv., *in common*.
- comparo, avi, atum, 1, *I compare, procure*.
- comperio, ri, rtum, 4, *I find out, understand*.
- complector, plexus sum, ti, dep., *I embrace, comprehend*.
- complexus, a, um, part. of complector.
- comploratio, onis, 3, f., *lamentation*.
- compono, sui, situm, 1, *I put together, compose*.
- conatus, us, 4, m., *an attempt*.
- concido, idi, isum, 3, *I cut off, cut in pieces, kill*.
- concilium, ii, 2, n., *an assembly, a council*.
- concito, avi, atum, 1, *I stir up, excite*.
- concludo, usi, usum, 3, *I conclude, finish, infer*.
- concordia, æ, 1, f., *concord, agreement*.
- concurro, ri, rsum, 3, *I run together, agree*.
- condo, idi, itum, 3, *I hide, finish*.
- condemnatu, a, um, part. of condemnno.
- condemno, avi, atum, 1, *I condemn*.
- confectus, a, um, part. of conficio.
- confertus, a, um, *thick*.
- conficio, eci, fectum, 3, *I finish, wear out*.
- confido, idi, isum, 3, *I confide, trust*.
- confisus, a, um (part. of confido, active in signification), *trusting, confiding*.
- confodio, di, ssum, 3, *I dig, stab*.
- confusus, a, um, *confused, jumbled together*.
- congero, gessi, gestum, 3, *I heap or pile together*.
- conjectus, a, um, part. of conicio.
- conicio, eci, ectum, 3, *I cast or throw together*.
- conjugium, ii, 2, n., *marriage*.
- conjuratio, onis, 3, f., *a conspiracy*.
- conjux, gis, 3, m. or f., *a husband or wife*.
- connubium, ii, 2, n., *marriage*.
- conor, conatus sum, ari, dep., *I attempt*.
- consci, a, um, *conscious, aware of*.
- consequor, cutus sum, qui, dep., *I follow up, reach, obtain*.
- conservo, avi, atum, 1, *I preserve*.
- consido, sedi, sessum, 3, *I sit down, settle, encamp*.
- consilium, ii, 2, n., *counsel, advice, design, purpose*.
- consisto, stiti, stitum, 3, *I consist, agree, stand together*.
- conspectus, us, 4, m., *a sight, view*.
- conspicio, exi, ectum, 3, *I view, behold, consider*.
- constat, *it is evident* (3rd sing. of consto).
- constituo, ui, utum, 3, *I constitute, appoint, resolve, agree*.
- consto, stiti, stitum and statum, 1, *I consist, agree with, am evident*.
- consuesco, evi, etum, 3, *I am accustomed to*.



- consuetudo, inis, 3, f., *a habit, custom.*  
 consul, ulis, 3, m., *a consul.*  
 consularis, e, *of consular rank.*  
 consulatus, us, 4, m., *the consulship.*  
 consulo, sului, sultum, 3, *I ask or give advice.*  
 consultor, oris, 3, m., *one who asks advice, a client.*  
 consultus, a, um, part. of consulo, *skilled.*  
 contendo, ndi, nsum and ntum, 3, *I strive, contend, aim at.*  
 contentus, a, um, *content.*  
 continentia, æ, 1, f., *continence, moderation, forbearance.*  
 contingo, tigi, tactum, 3, *I touch, happen, attain.*  
 continuus, a, um, *continual, constant.*  
 contra, prep., *opposed to, opposite to, against.*  
 contristo, avi, atum, 1, *I make sad.*  
 convenio, eni, entum, 4, *I come together, agree, suit.*  
 convicium, ii, 2, n., *reproach, abuse.*  
 convictor, oris, 3, m., *a companion at table, guest.*  
 convivium, ii, 2, n., *a feast, banquet, entertainment.*  
 convoco, avi, atum, 1, *I call together, convoke, summon.*  
 copia, æ, 1, f., *opportunity, abundance, resources, plenty.*  
 coram, prep., *before, in presence of.*  
 Corneli, orum, 2, m., *a family in Rome, the Corneli.*  
 Cornelius, ii, 2, m., *Cornelius.*  
 corpus, oris, 3, n., *a body.*  
 corrigo, exi, ectum, 3, *I correct, reform.*  
 corripio, ui, eptum, 3, *I seize, snatch, reprove.*  
 corrumpo, upi, ptum, 3, *I corrupt, waste, destroy.*  
 Cossus, i, 2, m., *Cossus.*  
 Crassus, i, 2, m., *Crassus.*  
 crassus, a, um, *thick, stupid.*  
 creber, ra, rum, *often, frequent, numerous.*  
 creditus, a, um, part. of credo.  
 credo, didi, ditum, 3, *I believe, trust, entrust.*  
 cresco, evi, etum, 3, *I grow, increase.*  
 crinis, is, 3, m., *hair.*  
 crudelitas, atis, 3, f., *cruelty.*  
 cubile, is, 3, n., *a bed.*  
 cubo, ui, itum, 1, *I am ill, confined to bed.*  
 cujas, atis, pron., *of what country or sect.*  
 cujus, a, um, pron., *whose, whereof.*  
 culex, icis, 3, m. or f., *a gnat, small fly.*  
 culpa, æ, 1, f., *a fault.*  
 culpo, avi, atum, 1, *I blame.*  
 cultura, æ, 1, f., *culture.*  
 cultus, a, um, part. of colo.  
 cultus, us, 4, m., *culture, tilling.*  
 cum, prep., *with.*  
 cum, adv., *when.*  
 Cumæ, arum, 1, f., *Cumæ, a town in Italy.*  
 cunctor, tatus sum, ari, dep., *I delay, hesitate.*  
 cunctus, a, um, *all, the whole.*  
 cupidissime, adv., *most anxiously.*  
 cupido, inis, 3, f., *desire, anxiety, lust.*  
 cupidus, a, um, *anxious, desirous.*  
 cupio, ivi, itum, 3, *I covet, desire much.*  
 cur, adv., *why?*  
 cura, æ, 1, f., *care, anxiety.*  
 curatio, onis, 3, f., *a curing, healing, a charge.*  
 Cures, ium, 3, *a town in Italy.*  
 Curiatius, ii, 2, m., *one of the Curiatii.*  
 Curius, ii, 2, m., *Curius.*  
 curo, avi, atum, 1, *I care for, take care of.*  
 curro, ri, sum, 3, *I run.*  
 cursus, us, 4, m., *a course, a running.*  
 curvus, a, um, *crooked.*

cuspis, idis, 3, f., *the point of a spear, a spear.*  
 custodio, ivi, itum, 4, *I guard.*  
 custos, odis, 3, m. or f., *a guard, a guardian.*  
 cutis, is, 3, f., *the skin.*

## D.

Dardanius, a, um, *Trojan.*  
 datus, a, um, part. of do.  
 de, prep., *of, from.*  
 dea, æ, 1, f., *a goddess.*  
 debeo, ui, itum, 2, *I ought, owe.*  
 debitus, a, um, part. of debeo, *due, appointed.*  
 decedo, essi, essum, 3, *I leave, depart.*  
 Decimus, i, 2, m., *Decimus.*  
 declaro, avi, atum, 1, *I declare, make evident, proclaim.*  
 decorus, a, um, *graceful, becoming, proper.*  
 decus, oris, 3, n., *beauty, ornament, grace.*  
 deditio, onis, 3, f., *a surrender.*  
 dedo, dedidi, ditum, 3, *I submit, yield, surrender, give over.*  
 deduco, uxi, ctum, 3, *I bring, take from, subtract, spin out.*  
 defero, tuli, latum (irreg. compound of fero), *I bring, carry off, confer, bestow.*  
 deficio, feci, fectum, 3, *I fail, leave, revolt, am defective, am discouraged.*  
 defigo, xi, ixum, 3, *I fix, fasten, thrust into.*  
 definio, ivi, itum, 4, *I define, determine, limit.*  
 defodio, fodi, fossum, 3, *I dig, hide in the earth.*  
 deformatus, a, um, part., *deformed, disgraced, fashioned.*  
 deformis, e, *deformed, ugly, sor-did, unsightly.*  
 defossus, a, um, part. of defodio.  
 defundo, fudi, fusum, 3, *I pour out.*  
 defusus, a, um, part. of defundo.

dego, gi, 3, *I lead, spend, live, dwell.*  
 degusto, avi, atum, 1, *I taste, touch slightly.*  
 dein, deinde, advs., *afterwards, then.*  
 Deiopeia, æ, 1, f., *the name of a nymph.*  
 dejicio, jeci, jectum, 3, *I cast down, remove, degrade.*  
 delasso, are, 1, *I tire out, weary.*  
 delecto, avi, atum, 1, *I please, delight.*  
 delictum, i, 2, n., *a crime, fault, offence.*  
 demens, ntis, *foolish, mad, outrageous.*  
 dementia, æ, 1, f., *foolishness, madness.*  
 demitto, misi, missum, 3, *I send down, dismiss, humble, submit.*  
 demum, adv., *at length.*  
 denique, adv., *in fine, at last.*  
 depello, puli, pulsum, 3, *I drive away, expel, banish.*  
 depono, posui, positum, 3, *I put off, lay down, fix, plant.*  
 descendo, di, ensum, 3, *I descend, fall.*  
 describo, ipsi, iptum, 3, *I describe, copy.*  
 desero, serui, sertum, 3, *I forsake, quit, give up.*  
 desertus, a, um, part. of desero.  
 desiderium, ii, 2, n., *desire, love, want, absence.*  
 desidia, æ, 1, f., *slothfulness.*  
 designatus, a, um, part., *appointed* (consul designatus, consul elect).  
 despondeo, di, *I promise, betroth, despair of.*  
 destino, are, *I determine, intend, aim at.*  
 desum, fui (compound of sum), *I am absent, wanting, fail.*  
 desuper, adv., *from above, on the top.*  
 deterior, us, *worse, weaker.*  
 devinco, ici, ictum, 2, *I overcome, conquer.*

devito, are, 1, *I avoid.*  
 devolo, are, 1, *I fly down, away, leave.*  
 devotus, a, um, part., *devoted, doomed, cursed.*  
 Deus, ei, 2, m., *a god, the Deity.*  
 dico, xi, ictum, 3, *I say, declare.*  
 dictator, oris, 3, m., *a dictator.*  
 dictito, are, 1, *I say often.*  
 dictum, i, 2, n., *a word, saying.*  
 dies, ei, 5, m. or f., *a day.*  
 differtus, a, um, part., *filled, stuffed.*  
 difficilis, e, *difficult.*  
 diffido, fidi, fidere, 3, *I distrust, despair.*  
 diffundo, fudi, fusum, 3, *I pour out, disperse, publish.*  
 dignitas, tatis, 3, f., *dignity, majesty, grandeur.*  
 dignus, a, um, *worthy, suitable, becoming.*  
 digredior, gressus sum, gredi, dep., *I depart, turn aside.*  
 digressus, us, 4, m., *a departure.*  
 dilabor, lapsus sum, labi, dep., *I slip aside, waste.*  
 dimico, cavi, care, 1, *I fight, engage, struggle.*  
 dimitto, isi, issum, 3, *I dismiss, discharge, let go.*  
 dimoveo, movi, motum, 2, *I remove, put away.*  
 discedo, essi, essum, 3, *I depart, leave, go off.*  
 disco, didici, cere, 3, *I learn, understand.*  
 discordia, æ, 1, f., *discord, disagreement.*  
 discrimen, minis, 3, n., *a difference, distinction, danger, a battle.*  
 disjicio, jeci, jectum, 3, *I disperse, overthrow.*  
 dispar, paris, *unlike.*  
 dispono, posui, positum, 3, *I dispose, set in order, settle.*  
 dissimilis, e, *unlike, different.*  
 dissipio, are, 1, *I dissipate, disperse, scatter, squander.*  
 distineo, nui, tentum, 2, *I hinder, keep off.*

ditesco, cere, 3, *I grow rich.*  
 diu, adv., *a long time.*  
 divello, vulsi, vulsum, 3, *I tear asunder, loosen.*  
 diversus, a, um, *different, contrary, separate.*  
 dives, itis, *rich, abounding in.*  
 dives, itis, 3, m. or f., *a rich person.*  
 divido, visi, visum, 3, *I divide, distribute, distinguish.*  
 divinus, a, um, *divine, blessed.*  
 divitiæ, arum, 1, f., *riches, wealth.*  
 divulgō, are, 1, *I spread abroad, make known.*  
 divus, i, 2, m., *a god.*  
 do, dedi, datum, 1, *I give.*  
 doceo, cui, ctum, 2, *I teach, inform, tell.*  
 docilis, e, *easily taught, docile.*  
 doctus, a, um, part. of doceo.  
 doleo, lui, litum, 2, *I grieve, am displeased.*  
 dolo, are, 1, *I beat, belabour.*  
 dolor, oris, 3, m., *grief, resentment.*  
 dolus, i, 2, m., *deceit, treachery.*  
 dominus, i, 2, m., *a master, a ruler, a lord.*  
 domo, mui, mitum, 1, *I tame, subdue, conquer.*  
 domus, i and us, 2 and 4, f., *a house, a residence.*  
 donec, adv., *until, as long as.*  
 dono, avi, atum, 1, *I give, bestow.*  
 donum, i, 2, m., *a gift, present.*  
 Doricus, a, um, *Doric.*  
 dormio, ivi, itum, 4, *I sleep.*  
 dorsum, i, 2, n., *the back, ridge of a hill.*  
 dubito, avi, atum, 1, *I doubt, hesitate.*  
 duco, xi, ctum, 3, *I draw, lead, carry, bring.*  
 ducto, avi, atum, 1, *I lead.*  
 ductus, a, um, part. of duco.  
 dulcis, e, *sweet, agreeable.*  
 dum, adv., *until, whilst.*  
 duo, æ, o (see Declension of Adjectives), *two.*

durus, a, um, *hard, difficult, unpleasant.*  
dux, ucis, 3, m. and f., *a leader.*

## È.

efficio, feci, fectum, 3, *I effect, bring about, accomplish.*  
effugio, ugi, itum, 3, *I escape, shun, avoid.*  
effundo, udi, usum, 3, *I pour out, empty, spread abroad.*  
egens, part., *needy, in want.*  
egeo, gui, gere, 2, *I want, stand in need of.*  
egestas, tatis, 3, f., *want, poverty.*  
ego, pron., *I.*  
egredior, gressus sum, gredi, dep., *I step forth, depart, embark.*  
egregius, a, um, *excellent, extraordinary.*  
eheu, interj., *ah! alas!*  
ejicio, jeci, jectum, 3, *I cast forth, eject, drive away.*  
elatio, onis, 3, f., *greatness of soul, sublimity.*  
elephantus, i, 2, m., *an elephant.*  
eloquentia, æ, 1, f., *eloquence.*  
emergo, rsi, rsum, 3, *I arise, rise from, emerge.*  
emissus, a, um, part. of emitto.  
emitto, isi, issum, 3, *I send forth, discharge, throw away.*  
emo, emi, emptum, 3, *I buy.*  
emptor, oris, 3, m., *a purchaser.*  
emptus, or emtus, part. of emo.  
enim, conj., *for, indeed.*  
enuncio, avi, atum, 1, *I speak, proclaim, pronounce.*  
eo, ivi, itum, irreg., *I go.*  
eo, adv., *therefore, thither, to that end.*  
Epirus, i, 2, f., *a country of Greece.*  
epistola, æ, 1, f., *a letter.*  
equa, æ, 1, f., *a mare.*  
eques, itis, 3, m., *a horseman, a knight.*  
equidem, adv., *indeed.*

equus, i, 2, m., *a horse.*  
ergo, adv., *therefore.*  
erigo, rexi, rectum, 3, *I erect, raise up, promote.*  
et, conj., *and, both.*  
etenim, conj., *for, because.*  
etiam, conj., *also, even, again.*  
Etruria, æ, 1, f., *Etruria.*  
Etruscus, a, um, *Etrurian.*  
Eurus, i, 2, m., *the east wind.*  
evenio, veni, ventum, 4, *I come out, happen.*  
ex, prep., *from, out of.*  
exagito, avi, atum, 1, *I harass, disturb, rouse up.*  
exanimo, avi, atum, 1, *I astonish, kill.*  
excidium, or exscidium, ii, 2, n., *destruction, ruin.*  
excipio, cepi, ceptum, 3, *I receive, undertake, except.*  
excito, avi, atum, 1, *I excite, stir up, animate.*  
exclamo, avi, atum, 1, *I exclaim.*  
exerceo, cui, citum, 2, *I exercise, practise.*  
exercitus, us, 4, m., *an army.*  
exigo, egi, actum, 3, *I exact, demand, drive away.*  
exiguus, a, um, *little, scanty.*  
existimo, avi, atum, 1, *I think, suppose, esteem.*  
exitus, us, 4, m., *an outlet, end, death, result.*  
expecto, avi, atum, 1, *I expect, hope, look for.*  
expedio, ivi, itum, 4, *I free, deliver, explain.*  
expeditus, a, um, part. of expedio.  
expeditus, a, um, *speedy, active.*  
expello, puli, pulsum, 3, *I drive out, expel.*  
expendo, ndi, nsum, 3, *I weigh, examine, value.*  
experiens, part. of experior.  
experimentum, i, 2, n., *an experiment, trial.*  
experior, expertus sum, experiri, dep., *I try, experiment.*  
expers, tis, *free from, having no part in.*



expleo, plevi, pletum, 2, *I fill up, complete.*  
 exploro, ploravi, ploratum, 1, *I explore, examine.*  
 expono, osui, ositum, 3, *I expose, set forth.*  
 excindo, ere, 3, *I cut off.*  
 execratio, onis, 3, f., *a cursing.*  
 execror, atus sum, crari, dep., *I curse.*  
 exsequor, cutus sum, sequi, dep., *I execute, do, perform.*  
 extemplo, adv., *immediately.*  
 exterritus, a, um, part., *affrighted.*  
 exterus, a, um, *strange, foreign, outward.*  
 extinguo, nxi, nctum, 3, *I extinguish, destroy.*  
 extraho, xi, ctum, 3, *I extract, pull out, withdraw.*  
 extremus, a, um, *extreme, utmost, farthest off.*  
 exuo, ui, utum, 3, *I take off, divest of.*

F.

Fabius, ii, 2, m., *the name of a noble family in Rome.*  
 Fabricius, ii, 2, m., *the name of a Roman family.*  
 facies, ei, 5, f., *a face, countenance, appearance, show, resemblance, portrait or picture, make, form, fashion, stature, beauty.*  
 facile, adv., *easily, readily, without much ado, certainly.*  
 facilis, e, *easy, feasible, gentle, mild, pliant, good-natured, easy to be pleased.*  
 facinus, oris, 3, n., *a great action, exploit, adventure.*  
 facio, feci, factum, cere, 3, *I do, perform, execute, commit.*  
 factum, i, 2, n., *a fact, action, deed, feat, transaction.*  
 factus, a, um, part., *done, made, formed, framed.*  
 facundia, æ, 1, f., *eloquence.*  
 fallo, fefelli, falsum, lere, 3, *I deceive, cheat, disappoint, beguile.*

fama, æ, 1, f., *fame, report, rumour.*  
 fames, is, 3, f., *hunger, fasting, famine, dearth, a greedy desire.*  
 familiaris, e, *of the same family or household, familiar, usual, friendly.*  
 familiaris, is, 3, m., *a servant of the family, an intimate, a friend.*  
 fanum, i, 2, n., *a temple, a church.*  
 farina, æ, 1, f., *meal, flour, powder.*  
 fatum, i, 2, n., *fate, God's providence or decree.*  
 Faunus, i, 2, m., *Faunus, a god of the country.*  
 faustitas, tatis, 3, f., *good luck.*  
 faux, cis, 3, f., *the jaw, a strait, narrow passage.*  
 faveo, vi, fautum, 2, *I favour, befriend.*  
 felix, icis, *happy, fortunate, propitious.*  
 fera, æ, 1, f., *a wild beast.*  
 fere, adv., *almost, nearly.*  
 feria, æ, 1, f., *a holiday.*  
 ferio, percussi, percussum, 4, *I strike, smite, sacrifice.*  
 fero, tuli, latum, irr., *I bear, carry, report.*  
 ferocia, æ, 1, f., *ferocity, cruelty.*  
 ferox, ocis, *ferocious, cruel, daring.*  
 ferrum, i, 2, n., *iron, a sword.*  
 ferus, a, um, *wild, savage.*  
 ferus, i, 2, m., *a wild beast.*  
 fessus, a, um, part., *wearied.*  
 fidelis, e, *faithful.*  
 fideliter, adv., *faithfully.*  
 fides, ei, 5, f., *faith, honour, truth.*  
 fido, idi, ere, 3, *I trust.*  
 fidus, a, um, *faithful.*  
 figo, xi, xum, 3, *I fix, shoot, pierce.*  
 filia, æ, 1, f., *a daughter.*  
 lius, ii, 2, m., *a son.*  
 findo, idi, issum, 3, *I cleave, split, divide.*  
 fingo, nxi, ictum, 3, *I form, devise, invent.*  
 finis, is, m. or f., 3, *an end, limit.*  
 finitimus, a, um, *bordering near, adjoining.*

fio, factus sum, fieri, irr., *I am made, done.*  
 Flaccus, i, 2, m., *Flaccus.*  
 flagitium, ii, 2, n., *a crime, disgrace.*  
 flagro, avi, are, 1, *I burn, am in a passion.*  
 flamma, æ, 1, f., *a flame.*  
 flatus, us, 4, m., *a blast, breath, gale.*  
 Flavius, ii, 2, m., *Flavius.*  
 flebilis, e, *mournful, to be lamented.*  
 flebiliter, adv., *mournfully.*  
 flecto, exi, exum, 3, *I bend.*  
 fleo, evi, etum, 2, *I weep.*  
 fluctus, us, 4, m., *a wave.*  
 fœdus, eris, 3, n., *a league.*  
 fœenerator, oris, 3, m., *an usurer.*  
 fœtus, us, 4, m., *the young of any creature, a birth.*  
 forma, æ, 1, f., *shape, form, beauty.*  
 formica, æ, 1, f., *an ant.*  
 formido, inis, 3, f., *fear, dread.*  
 fors, tis, 3, f., *fortune, chance.*  
 forsan, }  
 forsitan, } *advs., perhaps.*  
 forsit, }  
 forte, adv., *by chance.*  
 fortis, e, *strong, brave.*  
 fortitudo, inis, 3, f., *fortitude.*  
 fortuna, æ, 1, f., *fortune.*  
 fortunatus, a, um, *fortunate.*  
 forum, i, 2, n., *the forum, a market-place.*  
 fractus, a, um, part., *broken.*  
 frænum, i, 2, n., *a bridle, check.*  
 frangendus, a, um, part., *to be broken.*  
 frango, fregi, fractum, 3, *I break.*  
 frater, tris, 3, m., *a brother.*  
 fraus, dis, 3, f., *fraud, a cheat.*  
 frigus, oris, 3, n., *cold.*  
 frons, tis, 3, f., *the front, forehead.*  
 frons, dis, 3, f., *the leaf of a tree.*  
 frugi, indecl. adj., *careful, thrifty.*  
 frustra, adv., *in vain.*  
 fuga, æ, 1, f., *flight.*  
 fugio, gi, gitum, 3, *I flee, escape.*  
 fulgeo, lsi, lsum, 2, *I shine.*

fulmineus, a, um, *of or belonging to thunder, glittering.*  
 fulmino, avi, are, 1, *I thunder.*  
 futura, æ, 1, f., *a prop, support.*  
 Fulvia, æ, 1, f., *Fulvia.*  
 fundo, avi, atum, 1, *I found, lay a foundation, establish.*  
 fundo, fudi, fusum, 3, *I pour out, shed, spill.*  
 funus, eris, 3, n., *a funeral, death, corpse.*  
 furiosus, a, um, *furious, mad.*  
 furtim, adv., *privately, by stealth.*  
 fuscus, a, um, *brown, tawny, dark.*  
 fustis, tis, 3, m., *a club, staff.*  
 fusus, a, um, part., *poured out.*  
 futurus, a, um, part., *about to be.*

## G.

Gabinius, ii, 2, m., *Gabinius.*  
 Galli, orum, 2, m., *the Gauls.*  
 Gallia, æ, 1, f., *Gaul.*  
 Gallicus, a, um, *Gallic.*  
 Gallus, i, 2, m., *a Frenchman, a cock.*  
 garrulus, a, um, *prating, talkative.*  
 gaudium, ii, 2, n., *joy.*  
 gelidus, a, um, *cold.*  
 gemma, æ, f., *a gem, jewel.*  
 gena, æ, 1, f., *the cheek.*  
 genitor, oris, 3, m., *a father, begetter.*  
 genitrix, tricis, 3, f., *a mother.*  
 genius, ii, 2, m., *a genius, a good or evil demon.*  
 gens, tis, 3, f., *a nation, tribe, family.*  
 genus, eris, 3, n., *a kind, sort, stock, lineage.*  
 Germania, æ, 1, f., *Germany.*  
 gero, ssi, stum, 3, *I bear, conduct, wage.*  
 gingiva, æ, 1, f., *the gum.*  
 gladius, ii, 2, m., *a sword.*  
 glomeratus, a, um, part., *wound up like a ball.*  
 glomero, avi, atum, 1, *I wind up, gather in a heap, collect.*  
 gloria, æ, 1, f., *glory.*

gnatus, i, 2, m., *a son.*  
 gracilis, e, *slender, slight.*  
 Græci, orum, 2, m., *the Greeks.*  
 Græcia, æ, 1, f., *Greece.*  
 grandis, e, *great, sublime.*  
 grando, inis, 3, f., *hail.*  
 gratia, æ, 1, f., *grace, favour, influence.*  
 gratulor, atus sum, ari, dep., *I congratulate.*  
 gratus, a, um, *grateful, agreeable.*  
 gravis, e, *weighty, important.*  
 Grosphus, i, 2, m., *Grosphus.*  
 gubernor, avi, atum, 1, *I govern, steer.*  
 gula, æ, 1, f., *the throat.*

H.

habeo, ui, itum, 2, *I have, esteem, regard, deliver a speech.*  
 habitandus, a, um, part., *to be inhabited.*  
 habito, avi, atum, 1, *I dwell, inhabit.*  
 hæres, edis, 3, m. or f., *an heir.*  
 hostile, is, 3, n., *a spear.*  
 haud, adv., *not.*  
 Heliodoros, i, 2, m., *Heliodorus.*  
 herba, æ, 1, f., *an herb, grass.*  
 Hercules, is, 3, m., *Hercules.*  
 Hesperia, æ, 1, f., *Hesperia.*  
 heu, interj., *alas!*  
 hic, hæc, hoc, pron., *he, this.*  
 hic, adv., *here.*  
 hicce, hæcce, hocce, pron., *this.*  
 hiemo, avi, atum, 1, *I winter.*  
 Hiempsal, alis, 3, m., *Hiempsal.*  
 hiems, is, 3, f., *winter.*  
 hinc, adv., *hence, from this time.*  
 historia, æ, 1, f., *history.*  
 homo, inis, 3, m. or f., *a man or woman, a human being.*  
 honestus, a, um, *honourable, honest.*  
 honor, oris, 3, m., *honour, respect.*  
 hora, æ, 1, f., *an hour.*  
 Horatius, ii, 2, m., *Horatius.*  
 horrens, tis, *rough, horrible.*

horreo, ui, ere, 2, *I am rough, look horrid, shudder.*  
 horridus, a, um, *horrid.*  
 hortus, i, 2, m., *a garden.*  
 hospes, itis, 3, m. or f., *a guest, a host.*  
 hospitium, ii, 2, n., *hospitality, an inn.*  
 hostilis, e, *hostile.*  
 Hostilius, ii, 2, m., *Hostilius.*  
 hostis, is, 3, m. or f., *an enemy.*  
 huc, adv., *hither.*  
 humanitas, tatis, 3, f., *humanity, good-nature, politeness.*  
 humanus, a, um, *polite, human.*  
 humerus, i, 2, m., *the shoulder.*  
 humilis, e, *humble, low.*  
 hyemalia, ium, 3, n., *winter-quarters.*

I.

Iberia, æ, 1, f., *Spain.*  
 ibi, adv., *there.*  
 ico, ci, ctum, 3, *I strike.*  
 ictus, a, um, part. of ico.  
 Idæus, a, um, *belonging to Mount Ida, Idean.*  
 idem, eadem, idem, pron., *the same person or thing.*  
 igitur, conj., *therefore.*  
 ignarus, a, um, *ignorant, unskilful.*  
 ignavus, a, um, *indolent, sluggish.*  
 ignis, is, 3, m., *fire.*  
 ignoro, avi, atum, 1, *I don't know, am ignorant of.*  
 Iliacus, a, um, *Trojan.*  
 illabor, psus sum, labi, dep., *I slide, fall upon.*  
 ille, a, ud, pron., *he, she, that.*  
 illecebra, æ, 1, f., *an enticement.*  
 illuc, adv., *thither.*  
 illustris, e, *illustrious, famous, noble.*  
 imbuo, ui, utum, 3, *I imbue, tinge, stain, dye.*  
 imitor, tatus sum, tari, dep., *I imitate.*  
 immanitas, tatis, 3, f., *cruelty, savageness.*  
 immensus, a, um, *immense.*

- immineo, ui, ere, 2, *I hang over, impend, threaten.*  
 immortalis, e, *immortal.*  
 immuto, avi, atum, 1, *I change.*  
 imo, adv., *yes, nay.*  
 imparatus, a, um, part., *unprepared.*  
 impavidus, a, um, *fearless, undaunted.*  
 impello, puli, pulsum, 3, *I drive, thrust, persuade.*  
 impendo, dere, 2, *I threaten, hang over, am near at hand.*  
 imperator, oris, 3, m., *a commander, general, emperor.*  
 imperito, avi, atum, 1, *I rule, command.*  
 imperium, ii, 2, n., *military authority, rule, power.*  
 impero, avi, atum, 1, *I command.*  
 impetro, avi, atum, 1, *I obtain, finish.*  
 impiger, gra, grum, *active, diligent.*  
 impius, a, um, *impious, wicked.*  
 impleo, evi, etum, 2, *I fill up.*  
 implico, ui and cavi, citum and catum, 1, *I enfold, entangle, attack.*  
 imploro, avi, atum, 1, *I implore, beseech.*  
 impono, sui, situm, 3, *I impose, put on.*  
 importunus, a, um, *importunate, troublesome.*  
 improbus, a, um, *dishonest, wicked, base.*  
 impulsus, us, 4, m., *an impulse, attack, shock.*  
 in, prep., *in, upon, into, towards.*  
 inanis, e, *empty, useless, frivolous.*  
 incassum, adv., *in vain.*  
 incedo, essi, essum, 3, *I go, walk, enter on.*  
 inceptum, i, 2, n., *a beginning, undertaking.*  
 incertus, a, um, *uncertain, doubtful.*  
 incido, idi, casum, 3, *I fall into, happen.*  
 incipio, epi, eptum, 3, *I begin, undertake, attempt.*  
 incitatus, a, um, part., *stirred up, incited.*  
 incito, avi, atum, 1, *I stir up, excite.*  
 inclytus, a, um, *famous, excellent, renowned.*  
 incolumis, e, *safe.*  
 incorruptus, a, um, *uncorrupted, pure.*  
 incredibilis, e, *incredible.*  
 increpo, pui and pavi, pitum, 1, *I make a noise, chide, blame.*  
 incurro, ri, rsum, 3, *I run in or upon, attack.*  
 incutio, ussi, ssum, 3, *I strike, smite.*  
 inde, adv., *from thence, from that time, then.*  
 Indi, orum, 2, m. and f., *the Indians.*  
 indico, avi, atum, 1, *I point out, discover.*  
 indico, xi, ctum, 3, *I proclaim, declare.*  
 indignatio, onis, 3, f., *indignation.*  
 induco, xi, ctum, 3, *I induce, prevail on, lead into.*  
 indulgeo, lsi, ere, 2, *I indulge.*  
 inermis, e, *unarmed, defenceless.*  
 iners, tis, *inactive, sluggish, stupid.*  
 infans, tis, *infant, young.*  
 infans, tis, 3, m. or f., *an infant.*  
 infantia, æ, 1, f., *infancy.*  
 infero, tuli, illatum, *I bring in, conclude, apply.*  
 inferus, a, um, *low, inferior.*  
 infidelis, e, *faithless, unfaithful.*  
 infidus, a, um, *faithless, treacherous.*  
 infimus, a, um, *lowest, contemptible.*  
 ingenium, ii, 2, n., *nature, disposition, capacity.*  
 ingero, ssi, estum, 3, *I throw in, or upon, heap up.*  
 inimicus, a, um, *hostile, unfriendly.*  
 iniquus, a, um, *unjust, cruel.*  
 injuria, æ, 1, f., *injury, injustice.*  
 injuste, adv., *unjustly.*



*injustitia*, æ, 1, f., *injustice*.  
*injustus*, a, um, *unjust*.  
*innecto*, exui and exi, exum, 3, *I tie, bind, devise*.  
*inops*, is, *poor, destitute*.  
*inquam*, verb def., *I say*.  
*inquietus*, a, um, *unquiet*.  
*inquo*, verb def., *I say*.  
*insanus*, a, um, *insane, mad*.  
*insero*, sevi, situm, 3, *I sow in, im-plant*.  
*insidiæ*, arum, 1, f., *snares, am-bush*.  
*insisto*, stiti, stitum, 3, *I insist upon, urge, stand on*.  
*insolens*, tis, *insolent, unusual, un-accustomed*.  
*inspicio*, pexi, pectum, 3, *I look upon, look into, observe*.  
*inspiro*, avi, atum, 1, *I breathe into, inspire, animate*.  
*instituo*, ui, utum, 3, *I institute, appoint, establish*.  
*insto*, stiti, stitum, 1, *I urge, am earnest, threaten*.  
*insulto*, avi, atum, 1, *I insult, leap upon*.  
*insum*, fui, esse, *I am in*.  
*intactus*, a, um, part., *untouched, inviolate*.  
*integer*, gra, grum, *entire, whole*.  
*integritas*, tatis, 3, f., *perfectness, integrity*.  
*intelligo*, exi, ectum, 3, *I under-stand*.  
*intendo*, di, nsum and ntum, 3, *I intend, hold, design*.  
*inter*, prep., *between*.  
*interdum*, adv., *sometimes*.  
*interea*, adv., *in the meantime*.  
*interficio*, eci, ectum, 3, *I kill, slay*.  
*introeo*, ivi, itum, 4, *I enter into*.  
*intus*, adv., *within*.  
*invado*, asi, asum, 3, *I invade, enter on, attack*.  
*invenio*, ni, ntum, 4, *I invent, come into, contrive*.  
*inversus*, a, um, part., *inverted, turned upside down*.  
*inverto*, ti, rsum, 3, *I invert*.

*invictus*, a, um, part., *unconquered*.  
*invideo*, idi, isum, 2, *I envy, grudge, refuse*.  
*invidia*, æ, 1, f., *envy, odium*.  
*invidus*, a, um, *envious*.  
*invisus*, a, um, *unseen, odious, hated*.  
*ipse*, a, um, pron., *him, her, or itself*.  
*iracundus*, a, um, *passionate*.  
*irascor*, atus sum, sci, dep., *I am angry with*.  
*irrevocabilis*, e, *that cannot be re-called*.  
*irriguus*, a, um, *watered, moist*.  
*is*, ea, id, pron., *he, she, it*.  
*iste*, a, ud, pron., *this, that, he, that fellow or thing*.  
*ita*, adv., *so*.  
*Italia*, æ, 1, f., *Italy*.  
*Italicus*, a, um, *Italian*.  
*itaque*, adv., *therefore*.  
*item*, adv., *likewise*.  
*iter*, ineris, 3, n., *a journey, road*.  
*iterum*, adv., *again*.  
*iturus*, a, um, part., *about to go*.

J.

*jaceo*, ui, ere, 2, *I lie, lie down*.  
*jactans*, part., *tossing, boasting*.  
*jacto*, avi, atum, 1, *I toss, boast*.  
*jam*, adv., *now, even*.  
*jamdudum*, adv., *long since*.  
*jamque*, adv., *and now*.  
*jubeo*, jussi, jussum, 2, *I bid, com-mand, order*.  
*jucundus*, a, um, *pleasant*.  
*judico*, avi, atum, 1, *I judge, ad-judge, determine*.  
*jugerum*, i, 2, n., *an acre*.  
*jugulum*, i, 2, n., *the throat, neck*.  
*Jugurtha*, æ, 1, m., *Jugurtha*.  
*jungo*, nxi, nctum, 3, *I join, add, annex*.  
*Juno*, onis, 3, f., *Juno*.  
*Jupiter*, Jovis, 3, m., *Jupiter*.  
*jus*, juris, 3, n., *right, justice, law*.  
*jussum*, i, 2, n., *an order*.  
*justitia*, æ, 1, f., *justice*.

justus, a, um, *just, reasonable*.  
 juvenis, e, *youthful, young*.  
 juvenis, is, 3, m. or f., *a young person*.  
 juvena, æ, 1, f., *youth*.  
 juvenus, utis, 3, f., *youth*.  
 juvo, uvi, utum, 1, *I help, assist*.

## L.

labens, tis, part., *falling, sliding*.  
 labor, lapsus sum, labi, dep., *I fall, slide, slip*.  
 labor, and labos, oris, 3, m., *labour, work, trouble*.  
 laboro, avi, atum, 1, *I labour, work*.  
 lacryma, or lachryma, æ, 1, f., *a tear*.  
 lætitia, æ, 1, f., *joy, gladness*.  
 lætus, a, um, *joyful, glad*.  
 Lævinus, i, 2, m., *Lævinus*.  
 lævis, e, *smooth, polished*.  
 lævus, a, um, *left, on the left, foolish*.  
 lana, æ, 1, f., *wool*.  
 lapis, idis, 3, m., *a stone*.  
 laqueus, i, 2, m., *a snare, rope, halter*.  
 Lar, ris, 3, m., *a household god*.  
 latex, icis, 3, m., *liquor, spring-water*.  
 latro, onis, 3, m., *a robber*.  
 laturus, a, um, part., *about to bring, bear*.  
 laudo, avi, atum, *I praise, commend*.  
 Laurens, tis, 3, m. or f., *a Laurentine*.  
 laus, dis, 3, f., *praise*.  
 legatus, i, 2, m., *an ambassador*.  
 legio, onis, 3, f., *a legion*.  
 lego, gi, ctum, 3, *I gather, read*.  
 lenio, ivi, itum, 4, *I ease, mitigate, appease*.  
 leniter, adv., *softly, gently*.  
 Lentulus, i, 2, m., *Lentulus*.  
 lethargus, i, 2, m., *a lethargy*.  
 lethum, or letum, i, 2, n., *death*.  
 leviter, adv., *lightly, gently*.

levo, avi, atum, 1, *I lift up*.  
 lex, gis, 3, f., *law*.  
 liber, bera, berum, *free*.  
 liber, bri, 2, m., *a book*.  
 libero, avi, atum, 1, *I free*.  
 liberta, æ, 1, f., *a freedwoman*.  
 libertas, tatis, 3, f., *liberty*.  
 libertinus, i, 2, m., *a freedman*.  
 libertus, i, 2, m., *a freedman*.  
 Libya, æ, 1, f., *Africa*.  
 liceo, cui, citum, 2, *I am allowed* (in 3rd sing., *it is lawful*).  
 Licinius, ii, 2, m., *Licinius*.  
 ligo, avi, atum, 1, *I tie, bind*.  
 lingua, æ, 1, f., *a tongue, language*.  
 linter, tris, 3, m., *a boat*.  
 liquidus, a, um, *liquid*.  
 litera, æ, 1, f., *a letter of a book*.  
 literæ, arum, 1, f., *an epistle, letters, learning*.  
 lito, avi, atum, 1, *I sacrifice*.  
 litus, or littus, oris, 3, n., *the shore*.  
 loco, avi, atum, 1, *I place, settle*.  
 locus, i, 2, m., *a purse, bag, coffer*.  
 locus, i, 2, n. (in plural, *loci*, and neut., *loca*), *a place, occasion, opportunity*.  
 longe, adv., *far off*.  
 longinquus, a, um, *remote, far off*.  
 longus, a, um, *long*.  
 loquax, acis, *talkative*.  
 loquor, cutus sum, loqui, dep., *I speak*.  
 lubido, inis, 3, f., *pleasure, lust*.  
 Lucilius, ii, 2, m., *Lucilius*.  
 Lucius (Bestia), ii, 2, m., *Lucius*.  
 lucrum, i, 2, n., *gain, profit*.  
 luctus, us, 4, m., *grief*.  
 lucus, i, 2, m., *a grove*.  
 ludus, i, 2, m., *play, a school*.  
 lugubris, e, *mournful, sad*.  
 lumbus, i, 2, m., *the loin, the reins*.  
 lumen, inis, 3, n., *light, brightness*.  
 luna, æ, 1, f., *the moon*.  
 lupus, i, 2, m., *a wolf*.  
 lux, ucis, 3, f., *light*.

M.

macer, cra, crum, *lean, thin.*  
 madidus, a, um, *wet, moist.*  
 magalia, ium, 3, n., *cottages, sheds.*  
 magis, adv., *more.*  
 magister, tri, 2, m., *a master.*  
 magistratus, us, 4, m., *a magistracy.*  
 magnifice, adv., *magnificently, nobly.*  
 magnus, a, um, *large, great.*  
 majestas, atis, 3, f., *majesty, dignity.*  
 major, us, *greater, elder, important.*  
 majores, um, 3, m., *elders, ancestors.*  
 male, adv., *badly, improperly.*  
 malesuadus, a, um, *persuading ill.*  
 malignus, a, um, *malignant, ill-disposed, spiteful.*  
 malitia, æ, 1, f., *malice, vice.*  
 malo, lui, malle, irreg., *I am more willing, prefer.*  
 malum, i, 2, n., *an evil, sin, misfortune.*  
 malus, a, um, *bad, evil.*  
 mando, avi, atum, 1, *I command, bid, entrust.*  
 mane, adv., *in the morning.*  
 maneo, nsi, ere, 2, *I remain.*  
 manifestus, a, um, *manifest, clear, plain.*  
 Manlius, ii, 2, m., *Manlius.*  
 mansuetudo, dinis, 3, f., *clemency, gentleness.*  
 manus, us, 4, f., *a hand, a band of soldiers.*  
 Marcus, i, 2, m., *Marcus.*  
 mare, is, 3, n., *the sea.*  
 Marsi, orum, 2, m. or f., *the Marsi.*  
 mater, tris, 3, f., *a mother.*  
 mature, adv., *in time, speedily.*  
 maturo, avi, atum, 1, *I ripen, make haste.*  
 maturus, a, um, *ripe.*  
 Maximus, i, 2, m., *Maximus.*

maximus, a, um, *greatest.*  
 Medi, orum, 2, m. or f., *the Medes.*  
 medicus, i, 2, m., *a physician.*  
 meditor, atus sum, tari, dep., *I think, meditate, purpose.*  
 medius, a, um, *the middle.*  
 melior, us, *better.*  
 Melpomene, es (Greek declension), f., *Melpomene, one of the Muses.*  
 membrum, i, 2, n., *a limb, member.*  
 memor, oris, *mindful, grateful.*  
 memoro, avi, atum, 1, *I relate, remember.*  
 mens, tis, 3, f., *the mind.*  
 mensa, æ, 1, f., *a table.*  
 mensis, is, 3, m., *a month.*  
 mentior, itus sum, iri, dep., *I lie, feign, pretend.*  
 mercator, oris, 3, m., *a merchant.*  
 Mercurius, ii, 2, m., *Mercury.*  
 mereo, ui, itum, 2, *I deserve.*  
 meritum, i, 2, n., *merit.*  
 merum, i, 2, n., *pure wine.*  
 metallum, i, 2, n., *metal.*  
 Metellus, i, 2, m., *Metellus.*  
 Mettus, i, 2, m., *Mettus.*  
 metuo, ui, ere, 3, *I fear, dread*  
 metus, us, 4, m., *fear, dread.*  
 meus, a, um, pron., *mine.*  
 Mezentius, ii, 2, m., *Mezentius.*  
 Micipsa, æ, 1, m., *Micipsa.*  
 migro, avi, atum, 1, *I remove, emigrate.*  
 miles, itis, 3, m., *a soldier.*  
 militaris, e, *military, warlike.*  
 militia, æ, 1, f., *warfare, war.*  
 milito, avi, atum, 1, *I wage war.*  
 mille, is, 3, n., *a thousand.*  
 minæ, arum, 1, f., *threats, battlements.*  
 minax, acis, *threatening.*  
 Minerva, æ, 1, f., *Minerva.*  
 minimus, a, um, *least.*  
 minor, us, *less.*  
 minus, adv., *less.*  
 miror, atus sum, ari, dep., *I wonder at, admire.*  
 misceo, cui, mistum and mixtum, 2, *I mix, mingle.*

miser, era, erum, *miserable, wretched*.  
 miserabilis, e, *miserable, unhappy*.  
 miserandus, a, um, *to be pitied, worthy of pity*.  
 misere, adv., *wretchedly, very much*.  
 misereor, ertus sum, eri, dep., *I pity*.  
 miserescere, cere, 3, *I pity*.  
 miseria, æ, 1, f., *misery, wretchedness*.  
 missus, a, um, part. of mitto.  
 mitesco, cere, 3, *I grow mild*.  
 mitto, isi, issum, 3, *I send*.  
 mobilis, e, *moveable, fickle*.  
 modicus, a, um, *moderate*.  
 modo, adv., *just now, only*.  
 modus, i, 2, m., *a manner, measure*.  
 mœnia, ium, 3, n., *walls, fortifications*.  
 moles, is, 3, f., *a mass, any thing huge*.  
 molior, itus sum, iri, dep., *I undertake, attempt*.  
 molliter, adv., *softly, tenderly*.  
 momentum, i, 2, n., *a moment, weight, force*.  
 moneo, ui, itum, 2, *I advise*.  
 monitor, oris, 3, m. or f., *an adviser*.  
 monitus, a, um, part. of moneo.  
 mons, tis, 3, m., *a mountain*.  
 monstro, avi, atum, 1, *I point out*.  
 monstrum, i, 2, n., *a monster, wonder, prodigy*.  
 mora, æ, 1, f., *delay*.  
 morbus, i, 2, m., *disease, sickness*.  
 morior, mortuus sum, moriri, dep., *I die*.  
 moror, atus sum, ari, dep., *I delay*.  
 mors, tis, 3, f., *death*.  
 mortuus, a, um, *dead*.  
 mos, oris, 3, m., *a custom, morals*.  
 motus, a, um, part. of moveo.  
 motus, us, 4, m., *motion*.  
 moveo, ovi, otum, 2, *I move*.  
 mox, adv., *by and by, shortly*.

mula, æ, 1, f., *a she-mule*.  
 multitudo, inis, 3, f., *a multitude*.  
 multo, adv., *by much*.  
 multum, adv., *much*.  
 multus, a, um, *much, many*.  
 mundus, a, um, *clean, neat*.  
 mundus, i, 2, m., *the world*.  
 munificentia, æ, 1, f., *generosity, munificence*.  
 munio, ivi, itum, 4, *I fortify*.  
 munus, eris, 3, n., *a gift, present*.  
 murus, i, 2, m., *a wall*.  
 mutatio, onis, 3, f., *a change*.

## N.

Næ, adv., *yes, indeed, verily*.  
 nam, conj., *for, because*.  
 namque, conj., *for*.  
 narro, avi, atum, 1, *I tell, relate*.  
 nascens, tis, part. of nascor.  
 nascor, natus sum, nasci, dep., *I am born, arise, begin*.  
 nasus, i, 2, m., *the nose*.  
 nata, æ, 1, f., *a daughter*.  
 natura, æ, 1, f., *nature*.  
 natus, a, um, part. of nascor.  
 natus, i, 2, m., *a son*.  
 navis, is, 3, f., *a ship*.  
 navita, æ, 1, m., *a sailor*.  
 nauta, æ, 1, m., *a sailor*.  
 ne, adv. and conj., *not, lest, whether*.  
 nec, conj., *neither, nor*.  
 necatus, a, um, part., *killed*.  
 necessitudo, inis, 3, f., *necessity, friendship*.  
 nefas, indecl., n., *wickedness, impiety*.  
 negligo, exi, ectum, 3, *I neglect*.  
 negotior, atus sum, ari, dep., *I transact business*.  
 negotium, ii, 2, n., *business*.  
 nemo, inis, 3, m. and f., *nobody*.  
 nempe, adv., *namely*.  
 nepos, otis, 3, m., *a grandson*.  
 Neptunus, i, 2, m., *Neptunus*.  
 nequam, indecl. adj., *wicked, worthless*.  
 neque, conj., *neither, nor*.



nequeo, ivi, itum, 4, *I cannot.*  
 nequicquam, adv., *in vain.*  
 Nereus, i, 2, m., *Nereus.*  
 nervus, i, 2, m., *nerve, a cord.*  
 nescio, ivi, itum, 4, *I am ignorant, don't know.*  
 neuter, tra, trum, *neither.*  
 ni, conj., *unless.*  
 nidor, oris, 3, m., *a scent, a strong smell.*  
 nihil, indecl., n., *nothing.*  
 nihilominus, adv., *notwithstanding.*  
 nihilum, i, 2, n., *nothing.*  
 nil, for nihil, indecl.  
 nimbus, i, 2, m., *a cloud.*  
 nimis, adv., *too much.*  
 nimium, adv., *too much.*  
 nisi, conj., *if not, unless.*  
 niteo, tui, ere, 2, *I shine.*  
 nitor, nixus and nisus sum, ti, dep., *I endeavour, labour.*  
 nitor, oris, 3, m., *neatness, brightness.*  
 nobilis, e, *noble.*  
 nobilis, is, 3, m., *a nobleman.*  
 noceo, ui, citum, 2, *I hurt.*  
 nolo, nolui, nolle, irr., *I am unwilling.*  
 nomen, inis, 3, n., *a name, title.*  
 Nomentanus, i, 2, m., *Nomentanus.*  
 nomino, avi, atum, 1, *I name, nominate.*  
 non, adv., *not.*  
 nonnullus, a, um, *some.*  
 nonus, a, um, *ninth.*  
 nosco, ovi, otum, 3, *I know.*  
 noster, tra, trum, *ours, our.*  
 nostras, tis, *of our own country, sect, party.*  
 Notus, i, 2, m., *the south-wind.*  
 notus, a, um, part., *well known.*  
 novem, indecl., *nine.*  
 novendialis, e, *of nine days' continuance.*  
 novo, avi, atum, 1, *I renew, I make new.*  
 novus, a, um, *new, late.*  
 nox, ctis, 3, f., *night.*  
 nubes, is, 3, f., *a cloud.*

nudus, a, um, *naked.*  
 nugæ, arum, 1, f., *trifles.*  
 nullus, a, um, *none.*  
 num, adv., *whether.*  
 Numa, æ, 1, m., *Numa.*  
 Numantinus, a, um, *Numantine.*  
 numen, inis, 3, n., *the deity, will, decree.*  
 numero, avi, atum, 1, *I number, reckon.*  
 numerus, i, 2, m., *a number.*  
 Numidæ, arum, 1, m. and f., *the Numidians.*  
 Numidia, æ, 1, f., *Numidia.*  
 nummus, i, 2, m., *money.*  
 nunc, adv., *now.*  
 nuncio, avi, atum, 1, *I announce, tell.*  
 nuncius, ii, 2, m., *a messenger.*  
 nunquam, adv., *never.*  
 nutrio, ivi, itum, 4, *I nourish.*  
 nympa, æ, 1, f., *a nymph.*

O.

O! and oh! interjs., *oh!*  
 ob, prep., *for, on account of, in the way of.*  
 obo, ivi, itum, 4, *I go, go through, undertake.*  
 objicio, jeci, jectum, 3, *I object, throw in the way of.*  
 obiratus, part., *incensed with.*  
 oblivio, onis, 3, f., *forgetfulness.*  
 obnoxius, a, um, *obnoxious, liable to, subject to.*  
 obsidio, onis, 3, f., *a siege, blockade.*  
 obsto, stiti, stitum and statum, 1, *I stand in the way of, I oppose.*  
 obvius, a, um, *hindering, opposite to, hostile.*  
 occido, idi, isum, 3, *I kill, slay, put to death.*  
 occulte, adv., *secretly.*  
 occupo, avi, atum, 1, *I occupy, take beforehand, anticipate.*  
 occurro, ri, rsum, 3, *I occur, meet, run in the way of.*  
 oceanus, i, 2, m., *the ocean.*

ocior, us, *swifter*.  
 Octavius, ii, 2, m., *Octavius*.  
 octussis, is, m., *eight asses in money*.  
 oculus, i, 2, m., *the eye*.  
 ocyor, us, same as ocior.  
 odi, def. verb, *I hate*.  
 odium, ii, 2, n., *hatred*.  
 odor, oris, 3, m., *odour, a smell*.  
 offero, obtuli, oblatum, irr., *I offer, present*.  
 officium, ii, 2, n., *office, business, employment*.  
 oh! ohe! interjs., *oh! enough!*  
 olim, adv., *in time past, long ago, in time to come*.  
 omen, inis, 3, n., *an omen, sign*.  
 omitto, isi, issum, 3, *I omit, give up*.  
 omnino, adv., *in all, entirely, altogether*.  
 omnis, e, *all*.  
 onus, eris, 3, n., *a burthen, load*.  
 opacus, a, um, *shady, dark, gloomy*.  
 opera, æ, 1, f., *work, labour*.  
 Opimius, ii, 2, m., *Opimius*.  
 oporteo, ere, 2, *I behove*.  
 oppeto, tivi and tii, titum, 3, *I undergo, die in battle*.  
 opportunus, a, um, *seasonable, favourable*.  
 opprimo, essi, essum, 3, *I oppress, overpower, overwhelm*.  
 oppugnatio, onis, 3, f., *an assault, siege*.  
 oppugno, avi, atum, 1, *I attack, assault*.  
 ops, opis, 3, f., *assistance, wealth, resources*.  
 optimus, a, um, *best*.  
 opto, avi, atum, 1, *I wish*.  
 opulentus, a, um, *wealthy*.  
 opus, eris, 3, n., *work, labour*.  
 opus, indecl., *need*.  
 orandus, a, um, *to be prayed for*.  
 oratio, onis, 3, f., *an oration, speech*.  
 orbis, is, 3, m., *an orb, circle, the world*.  
 Orcus, i, 2, m., *Pluto, the grave, hell*.

ordo, inis, 3, m., *order, regularity*.  
 orior, ortus sum, oriri, dep., *I arise, begin*.  
 oro, avi, atum, 1, *I beg, entreat*.  
 Orpheus, i, 2, m., *Orpheus*.  
 ortus, a, um, part., *risen*.  
 ortus, us, 4, m., *a rising*.  
 oryza, æ, 1, f., *rice*.  
 os, oris, 3, n., *the mouth, face*.  
 os, ossis, 3, n., *a bone*.  
 ostendo, di, nsum, 3, *I show, display*.  
 ostium, ii, 2, n., *a door, entrance, the mouth of a river*.  
 otium, ii, 2, n., *leisure, ease*.  
 ovans, tis, part., *triumphing*.  
 ovis, is, 3, f., *a sheep*.

## P.

pacatus, a, um, part., *reduced to peace, pacified*.  
 Pachynus, i, 2, m., *a promontory of Sicily*.  
 paco, avi, atum, 1, *I reduce to peace, pacify*.  
 pactio, onis, 3, f., *a covenant, agreement*.  
 pactum, i, 2, n., *a covenant, manner*.  
 palam, adv., *openly*.  
 Palinurus, i, 2, m., *Palinurus*.  
 pallens, tis, part., *pale, being pale, causing paleness*.  
 pallidus, a, um, *pale*.  
 palpor, atus sum, ari, dep., *I stroke gently, soothe, flatter*.  
 paludamentum, i, 2, n., *a military cloak*.  
 paluster, tris, e, *marshy*.  
 pando, di, nsum and ssum, 3, *I open, spread, display*.  
 Pantolabus, i, 2, m., *Pantolabus*.  
 par, is, *equal*.  
 paratus, a, um, part., *prepared*.  
 parens, tis, m. and f., *a parent*.  
 parens, tis, part., *obeying*.  
 pareo, ui, itum, 2, *I appear, obey*.  
 paries, tis, 3, m., *a wall*.  
 pariter, adv., *equally*.

paro, avi, atum, 1, *I prepare.*  
 paropsis, idis, 3, f., *a dish.*  
 pars, tis, 3, f., *a part.*  
 Parthus, i, 2, m., *a Parthian.*  
 partim, adv., *partly, in part.*  
 parturio, ivi, itum, 4, *I bring forth in childbirth.*  
 partus, us, 4, m., *a birth, offspring.*  
 partus, a, um, part., *brought forth.*  
 parum, adv., *little.*  
 parvulus, a, um, *very little.*  
 parvus, a, um, *small.*  
 pasco, avi, stum, 3, *I feed, nourish, support.*  
 pascor, pastus sum, pasci, dep., *I feed.*  
 patens, tis, part., *lying open.*  
 pater, tris, 3, m., *a father, a senator.*  
 patera, æ, 1, f., *a goblet.*  
 patiens, tis, part., *suffering, able to endure.*  
 patria, æ, 1, f., *one's country.*  
 patricius, ii, 2, m., *a patrician.*  
 patricius, a, um, *patrician.*  
 patrimonium, ii, 2, n., *patrimony, the paternal estate.*  
 patrius, a, um, *paternal, belonging to a father or to one's country.*  
 patro, avi, atum, 1, *I commit, effect.*  
 patulus, a, um, *open, wide.*  
 pauci, æ, a, *few.*  
 paucitas, tatis, 3, f., *fewness, a few people.*  
 paulatim, adv., *by degrees.*  
 paulo, adv., *by a little.*  
 paululum or paullulum, adv., *a little.*  
 pauper, ris, *poor, a poor person.*  
 pauperies, ei, 5, f., *poverty.*  
 paupertas, tis, 3, f., *poverty.*  
 paveo, vi, vere, 2, *I fear, dread.*  
 pax, cis, 3, f., *peace.*  
 peccatum, i, 2, n., *sin, a crime.*  
 pectus, oris, 3, n., *the breast.*  
 pecunia, æ, 1, f., *money.*  
 pedes, itis, 3, m., *a foot-soldier.*  
 pelagus, i, 2, n., *the sea.*

pellis, is, 3, f., *the skin, the hide of a beast.*  
 pello, pepuli, pulsum, 3, *I drive, drive away.*  
 pendens, tis, part., *hanging, depending.*  
 pendeo, pependi, ere, 2, *I hang, depend.*  
 penna, æ, 1, f., *a feather, quill.*  
 per, prep., *through, by means of.*  
 perambulo, avi, atum, 1, *I walk, travel over.*  
 percontator, oris, 3, m., *an asker, a busybody.*  
 percunctor, atus sum, ari, dep., *I ask, inquire.*  
 perdo, idi, itum, 3, *I lose, spend, destroy.*  
 perduco, xi, ctum, 3, *I carry, bring, lead through.*  
 pereo, ivi, itum, 4, *I perish.*  
 perfero, tuli, latum, irr., *I carry, endure.*  
 Pergamus, i, 2, f. (in pl. Pergama, orum, 2, n.), *Pergamus, Troy.*  
 periculum, or periculum, i, 2, n., *danger, hazard.*  
 periculosus, a, um, *dangerous.*  
 peritus, a, um, *skilful, experienced.*  
 permisceo, cui, istum and ixtum, 2, *I mix, mingle, disorder.*  
 permistus, or permixtus, part., *mixed, &c.*  
 permitto, isi, issum, 3, *I allow, permit.*  
 permotus, a, um, part., *greatly moved, affected.*  
 permoveo, ovi, otum, 2, *I move greatly, affect.*  
 perpello, puli, pulsum, 3, *I force, persuade.*  
 perpetuus, a, um, *perpetual, everlasting.*  
 perrumpo, rupi, ruptum, 3, *I break through by force.*  
 persequor, quutus sum, sequi, dep., *I pursue, follow up, execute, perform.*  
 persuadeo, asi, dere, 2, *I persuade.*

- perterreo, rui, ritum, 2, *I frighten*.  
 perterritus, a, um, part., *frightened*.  
 perturbatus, a, um, part., *disturbed, troubled*.  
 pes, pedis, 3, m., *a foot*.  
 pestilentia, æ, 1, f., *pestilence*.  
 petitio, onis, 3, f., *a petition, request*.  
 peto, ivi, itum, 3, *I ask, seek*.  
 Petreius, ii, 2, m., *Petreius*.  
 pharetra, æ, 1, f., *a quiver*.  
 Phocæi, orum, 2, m. and f., *the Phocæans*.  
 piger, ra, rum, *slow, sluggish, inactive*.  
 pigritia, æ, 1, f., *slothfulness*.  
 pilum, i, 2, n., *a javelin*.  
 pius, a, um, *devout, religious, dutiful, good-natured*.  
 placeo, ui, itum, 2, *I please*.  
 placidus, a, um, *calm, mild, placid*.  
 plebs, is, 3, f., *the common people*.  
 plenus, a, um, *full*.  
 plerique, pleræque, pleraque, adj. pl., *the most, the greatest part*.  
 Plotius, ii, 2, m., *Plotius*.  
 pluma, æ, 1, f., *a feather*.  
 plurimus, a, um, *very much, very many*.  
 plus, adv., *more*.  
 pœna, æ, 1, f., *punishment*.  
 polliceor, itus sum, ceri, dep., *I promise*.  
 pollicitatio, onis, 3, f., *a promise*.  
 pollicitus, a, um, part., *having promised*.  
 Pompeius, ii, 2, m., *Pompey*.  
 Pompilius, ii, 2, m., *Pompilius*.  
 pondus, eris, 3, n., *weight*.  
 ponendus, a, um, part., *to be placed, rejected*.  
 pono, sui, situm, 3, *I place, lay, lay aside*.  
 popularis, e, *popular*.  
 popularis, is, 3, m. and f., *an accomplice*.  
 populus, i, 2, f., *a poplar tree*.  
 populus, i, 2, m., *the people*.  
 Porcius, ii, 2, m., *Porcius*.  
 Porsena, or Porsenna, æ, 1, m., *Porsena*.  
 porta, æ, 1, f., *a gate, door*.  
 portendo, di, ntum, 3, *I portend, betoken*.  
 porto, avi, atum, 1, *I carry*.  
 posco, poposci, cere, 3, *I ask, demand*.  
 positus, a, um, part., *placed*.  
 possideo, sedi, sessum, 2, *I possess*.  
 possum, potui, posse, irr., *I am able*.  
 post, prep., *after, behind*.  
 postea, adv., *afterwards*.  
 posterus, a, um, *the next*.  
 postquam, adv., *after that, since*.  
 postremo, adv., *finally, at last*.  
 postremus, a, um, *the last*.  
 postulo, avi, atum, 1, *I entreat, beseech*.  
 potens, tis, part., *powerful, able*.  
 potentia, æ, 1, f., *power*.  
 potior, itus sum, iri, dep., *I possess, enjoy, get possession of*.  
 potior, oris, *better, preferable*.  
 præ, prep., *before, in comparison of, exceedingly*.  
 præbeo, ui, ere, 2, *I afford*.  
 præceptum, i, 2, n., *an order*.  
 præcinctus, a, um, *girded, equipped*.  
 præcipio, cepi, ceptum, 3, *I prevent, instruct, command*.  
 præclarus, a, um, *illustrious, very bright, famous*.  
 præda, æ, 1, f., *plunder*.  
 prælium, ii, 2, n., *a battle*.  
 præmium, ii, 2, n., *a reward*.  
 præscribo, psi, ptum, 3, *I prescribe, order, appoint*.  
 præsens, tis, *present, immediate*.  
 præsertim, adv., *especially*.  
 præsidium, ii, 2, n., *a safeguard, protection, a garrison*.  
 præsto, stiti, stitum and statum, 1, *I stand before, excel*.  
 præter, prep., *besides, over and above, except*.  
 præterea, adv., *besides*.



prætor, oris, 3, m., a *prætor*,  
*governor*.  
 prætorius, a, um, *belonging to a*  
*general*.  
 pravus, a, um, *wicked, depraved*.  
 precis, ci, cem, prece; pl., preces,  
 precum, precibus, 3, f., a  
*prayer, entreaty*.  
 prehendo, di, nsum, 3, I *grasp*,  
*seize*.  
 prendo, di, nsum, 3, I *grasp, seize*.  
 prensus, a, um, part., *grasped*.  
 pretium, ii, 2, n., *price, reward*.  
 Priamus, i, 2, m., *Priam*.  
 primum, adv., *in the first place,*  
*especially*.  
 primus, a, um, *the first, especial*.  
 princeps, ipis, *chief*.  
 princeps, ipis, 3, m., a *chief*.  
 principium, ii, 2, n., *a beginning*.  
 prior, us, oris, *former, better*.  
 pristinus, a, um, *ancient, former*.  
 prius, adv., *before, sooner*.  
 priusquam, adv., *before that*.  
 privatim, adv., *privately*.  
 privus, a, um, *particular, what is*  
*one's own*.  
 pro, prep., *for, on account of*.  
 probe, adv., *well*.  
 procedo, ssi, ssum, 3, I *proceed,*  
*advance*.  
 proclivis, e, *down hill, steep, in-*  
*clined to*.  
 procul, adv., *far, far off*.  
 prodigium, ii, 2, n., a *prodigy,*  
*wonder*.  
 prodigus, a, um, *lavish, prodigal*.  
 prodo, didi, ditum, 3, I *betray,*  
*deliver*.  
 produco, xi, ctum, 3, I *produce,*  
*bring, draw, lead*.  
 profaris (no 1st person), fatur,  
 fari, dep., *thou speakest*.  
 proficiscor, fectus sum, cisci, dep.,  
 I *go, depart*.  
 profugio, ugi, gitum, 3, I *flee,*  
*escape*.  
 prognatus, a, um, part., *born, be-*  
*gotten*.  
 prohibeo, ui, itum, 2, I *prohibit,*  
*hinder*.

proles, is, 3, f., *offspring*.  
 promitto, isi, issum, 3, I *promise*.  
 pronus, a, um, *prone, inclined to*.  
 prope, prep., *near to*.  
 propere, adv., *speedily*.  
 propinquus, a, um, *near to, neigh-*  
*bouring, related to*.  
 propior, us, oris, *nearer*.  
 propositum, i, 2, n., a *purpose,*  
*design*.  
 proprius, a, um, *proper, fit, peculiar*  
*to an individual*.  
 propter, prep., *for, on account of*.  
 propugno, avi, atum, 1, I *fight*.  
 prorepto, epsi, eptum, 3, I *creep*  
*along*.  
 prosequor, cutus sum, qui, dep.,  
 I *pursue, worship*.  
 prosilio, lui and livi, sultum, 4, I  
*leap*.  
 prospere, adv., *prosperously*.  
 prospicio, exi, ectum, 3, I *foresee,*  
*behold*.  
 prosterno, stravi, stratum, 3, I  
*overthrow, strew*.  
 protervus, a, um, *saucy, wanton*.  
 protinus, or protenus, adv., *imme-*  
*diately, forthwith*.  
 provideo, idi, isum, 2, I *foresee,*  
*provide*.  
 provincia, æ, 1, f., a *province,*  
*office*.  
 proximus, a, um, *nearest, next*.  
 prudens, tis, *prudent, skilful*.  
 prudentia, æ, 1, f., *prudence*.  
 ptisanarium, ii, 2, n., *rice-milk*.  
 pubes, is, 3, f., *the middle, the*  
*waist, youth*.  
 publice, adv., *publicly, at the public*  
*expense*.  
 publicus, a, um, *public, common*.  
 Publius, ii, 2, m., *Publius*.  
 pudor, oris, 3, m., *bashfulness,*  
*modesty, shame*.  
 puer, ri, 2, m., a *boy, child*.  
 pugna, æ, 1, f., a *fight, battle*.  
 pugno, avi, atum, 1, I *fight*.  
 pulcher, ra, rum, *fair, beautiful,*  
*honourable*.  
 pulmentarium, ii, 2, n., *pottage,*  
*gruel, delicacies*.

pulso, avi, atum, 1, *I beat, knock at.*

Punicus, a, um, *Punic, Carthaginian.*

purgo, avi, atum, 1, *I purge, cleanse, excuse, expiate.*

purpura, æ, 1, f., *purple.*

purpureus, a, um, *purple.*

purus, a, um, *pure, clean.*

puto, avi, atum, 1, *I think.*

Pygmalion, onis, 3, m., *Pygmalion.*

Pyrrhus, i, 2, m., *Pyrrhus.*

### Q.

Qua, adv., *where, by which means.*

quæro, æsivi, æsitum, 3, *I ask, seek, look for.*

quæsitus, a, um, part., *sought for.*

quæso, verb def., *I beseech, pray.*

quæstio, onis, 3, f., *a question, debate, inquiry.*

qualis, e, *such, of what manner.*

quam, adv., *how, than.*

quamvis, conj., *although.*

quando, adv., *when, since.*

quandoque, adv., *one time or other, whensoever.*

quanquam, or quamquam, conj., *although.*

quanto, adv., *by how much.*

quantum, adv., *as much as.*

quantus, a, um, *how great, how many.*

quapropter, adv., *wherefore, why?*

quare, adv., *wherefore, why?*

quasi, adv., *as if, as it were.*

quassatus, a, um, part., *shaken.*

quatio, assi, assum, 3, *I shake.*

que, conj., *and, both.*

queo, ivi, itum, 4, *I am able, I can.*

querela, æ, 1, f., *a complaint.*

queror, questus sum, queri, dep., *I complain.*

qui, quæ, quod, pron., *which, that, what, who.*

quia, conj., *because.*

quicumque, quæcunque, quod-

cunque, pron., *whosoever, whatsoever.*

quid, neut., used as a noun, *what?*

quidam, quædam, quoddam and quiddam, pron., *one, some one, such a one.*

quidem, adv., *indeed.*

quies, etis, 3, f., *rest, ease.*

quiesco, evi, etum, 3, *I rest.*

quietus, a, um, *quiet, calm.*

quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet, pron., *any one, as much as you like.*

Quinctilius, ii, 2, m., *Quinctilius.*

quingenta, indecl., *fifty.*

quintus, a, um, *the fifth.*

Quirinus, i, 2, m., *Romulus.*

Quiris, itis, 3, m. or f., *a Roman.*

quis, quæ, quid or quod, pron., *who? which? what kind?*

quisquam, quæquam, quidquam or quicquam, pron., *any one, any thing.*

quisque, quæque, quodque, pron., *every man, every thing, whatsoever.*

quisquis, m. and f., pron., *whosoever, whoever.*

quivis, quævis, quidvis or quodvis, pron., *whosoever, any one.*

quo, adv., *whither? on which account, wherefore.*

quocirca, conj., *wherefore.*

quocunque, adv., *whithersoever.*

quod, conj., *that, because.*

quondam, adv., *in time past, formerly, sometimes.*

quoniam, conj., *since, because.*

quoque, conj., *also.*

quot, indecl., *how many? so many as.*

quotidianus, a, um, *daily, common.*

quum, conj., *since, whereas.*

### R.

Rana, æ, 1, f., *a frog.*

rapax, acis, *rapacious, ravenous.*

rapio, ui, ptum, 3, *I snatch, take by force.*

ratio, onis, 3, f., *reason, cause, means.*  
 ratis, is, 3, f., *a ship.*  
 ratus, a, um, part., *supposing, thinking.*  
 recalcitro, avi, atum, 1, *I kick.*  
 recedo, ssi, ssum, 3, *I recede, withdraw, depart.*  
 recens, tis, *fresh, late.*  
 recipio, cepi, ceptum, 3, *I receive, take back, recover.*  
 recito, avi, atum, 1, *I recite, repeat, read over.*  
 reconcilio, avi, atum, 1, *I reconcile, recover.*  
 recte, adv., *rightly, properly.*  
 rectum, i, 2, n., *a right line, right, virtue.*  
 rectus, a, um, *straight, upright.*  
 reddo, didi, ditum, 3, *I restore, give back, afford.*  
 redeo, ivi, itum, 4, *I return.*  
 reditus, us, 4, m., *a return.*  
 reduco, xi, ctum, 3, *I bring back, restore.*  
 refero, tuli, latum, irreg., *I bring, turn back, wage.*  
 refugio, ugi, itum, 3, *I flee, escape, avoid.*  
 refulgeo, lsi, ere, 2, *I shine, smile upon.*  
 regio, onis, 3, f., *a region, tract, country.*  
 regius, a, um, *regal, royal.*  
 regnum, i, 2, n., *a kingdom, a reign.*  
 rego, xi, ctum, 3, *I rule.*  
 regredior, essus sum, edi, dep., *I go back, return.*  
 regressus, a, um, *returned, having returned.*  
 regressus, us, 4, m., *a return.*  
 relictus, a, um, part., *left.*  
 religio, onis, 3, f., *religion.*  
 religo, avi, atum, 1, *I bind.*  
 relinquo, iqui, ictum, 3, *I leave, forsake, give up.*  
 reliquus, a, um, *what is left, the remainder.*  
 remedium, ii, 2, n., *a remedy.*

reor, ratus sum, reri, dep., *I think, suppose.*  
 repello, puli, pulsum, 3, *I repel, reject, throw back.*  
 repente, adv., *suddenly.*  
 reperio, eri, ertum, 4, *I find, discover.*  
 repeto, tivi or ii, titum, 3, *I ask, seek, demand.*  
 repulsa, æ, 1, f., *a repulse, rejection.*  
 requiro, isivi, isitum, 3, *I ask, seek, search into.*  
 res, ei, 5, f., *a thing, matter, concern.*  
 resisto, stiti, stitum, 3, *I resist, halt.*  
 respicio, exi, ectum, 3, *I look back on, regard.*  
 respondeo, ndi, nsum, 2, *I answer.*  
 respublica, reipublicæ, 1 and 5, f., *the state, commonwealth.*  
 resto, stiti, stitum, 1, *I stay, remain, stand forth.*  
 retinaculum, i, 2, n., *a string, cable, halter.*  
 retineo, nui, entum, 2, *I hold, keep back, restrain.*  
 revertor, rsus sum, rti, dep., *I return.*  
 revoco, avi, atum, 1, *I call back, revoke.*  
 rex, egis, 3, m., *a king.*  
 rhetor, oris, 3, m., *a rhetorician.*  
 ritus, us, 4, m., *a rite, ceremony.*  
 robustus, a, um, *robust, strong.*  
 rodo, osi, osum, 3, *I gnaw, wear away.*  
 rogatio, onis, 3, f., *a question, request.*  
 rogo, avi, atum, 1, *I ask, desire.*  
 rogos, i, 2, m., *a funeral pile.*  
 Roma, æ, 1, f., *Rome.*  
 Romanus, a, um, *Roman.*  
 Romanus, i, 2, m., *a Roman.*  
 Romulus, i, 2, m., *Romulus.*  
 Romulus, a, um, *Roman.*  
 ruens, tis, part., *rushing, falling to decay.*  
 Rufus, i, 2, m., *Rufus.*  
 ruga, æ, 1, f., *a wrinkle.*

ruina, æ, 1, f., *ruin, destruction.*  
 ruo, ui, itum and utum, 3, *I rush, fall down.*  
 rursus, adv., *again.*  
 Rutilius, ii, 2, m., *Rutilius.*  
 Rutuli, orum, 2, m. and f., *the Rutuli.*

## S.

Sabini, orum, 2, m. and f., *the Sabines.*  
 Sabinus, a, um, *Sabine.*  
 saccus, i, 2, m., *a sack, bag.*  
 sacer, cra, crum, *sacred, devoted, cursed.*  
 sacrum, i, 2, n., *a sacrifice.*  
 sæpe, adv., *often.*  
 sæpenumero, adv., *oftentimes, many a time.*  
 sævitia, æ, 1, f., *cruelty, harshness.*  
 sævus, a, um, *cruel.*  
 sagitta, æ, 1, f., *an arrow.*  
 sal, is, 3, m., *salt, the sea.*  
 salignus, a, um, *of willow.*  
 saltus, us, 4, m., *a forest, grove.*  
 saluber, bris, e, *healthy, wholesome.*  
 salus, utis, 3, f., *health, safety.*  
 sanctus, a, um, *holy, pious.*  
 sanguis, inis, 3, m., *blood.*  
 sanus, a, um, *sane, healthful.*  
 sapiens, tis, 3, m. and f., *a wise person.*  
 sapiens, tis, *wise.*  
 Sardanapalus, i, 2, m., *Sardanapalus.*  
 satelles, itis, 3, m., *a body-guard.*  
 satira, æ, 1, f., *a satire.*  
 satis, adv., *enough.*  
 Satureianus, a, um, *Satureian.*  
 saucius, a, um, *wounded.*  
 scando, di, nsum, 3, *I climb, ascend.*  
 scelus, eris, 3, n., *wickedness.*  
 sceptrum, i, 2, n., *a sceptre.*  
 scientia, æ, 1, f., *science, skill, knowledge.*  
 scindo, scidi, issum, 3, *I cut, cleave, rend.*

scio, ivi, itum, 4, *I know.*  
 Scipiadas, æ, 1, m., *Scipio.*  
 Scipio, onis, 3, m., *Scipio.*  
 scopulus, i, 2, m., *a rock.*  
 scribo, ipsi, iptum, 3, *I write, compose a book.*  
 sculpo, psi, ptum, 3, *I carve, engrave.*  
 scurra, æ, 1, m., *a scoffer, a buffoon.*  
 Scythes, is, 3, m. or f., *a Scythian.*  
 secerno, crevi, cretum, 3, *I separate, distinguish.*  
 seco, cui, ctum and catum, 1, *I cut.*  
 secundus, a, um, *second, prosperous, propitious.*  
 sed, conj., *but.*  
 sedes, is, 3, f., *a seat.*  
 sedile, is, 3, n., *a seat.*  
 semel, adv., *once.*  
 semita, æ, 1, f., *a footpath, path.*  
 semper, adv., *always.*  
 Sempronia, æ, 1, f., *Sempronia.*  
 senator, oris, 3, m., *a senator.*  
 senatus, us, 4, m., *the senate.*  
 senectus, utis, 3, f., *old age.*  
 senex, is, *old.*  
 senex, is, 3, m. and f., *an old person.*  
 senilis, e, *belonging to old age.*  
 sententia, æ, 1, f., *a sentence, opinion, decree, purpose.*  
 sentio, nsi, nsum, 4, *I am sensible of, I think, feel.*  
 septem, indecl., *seven.*  
 sequor, cutus sum, sequi, dep., *I follow.*  
 sermo, onis, 3, m., *speech, a discourse, language.*  
 serva, æ, 1, f., *a female slave.*  
 servio, ivi, itum, 4, *I serve as a slave.*  
 servo, avi, atum, 1, *I keep, preserve.*  
 servus, i, 2, m., *a slave, a servant.*  
 seu, conj., *either, or.*  
 severitas, tatis, 3, f., *severity, sharpness.*  
 si, conj., *if, since.*  
 Sibylla, æ, 1, f., *the Sibyl.*



sic, adv., *so, thus.*  
 siccus, a, um, *dry, sober, fasting.*  
 Siculi, orum, 2, m. and f., *the Sicilians.*  
 Siculus, a, um, *Sicilian.*  
 sicuti, adv., *just as if.*  
 Sidonius, a, um, *Sidonian.*  
 sidus, eris, 3, n., *a star.*  
 signum, i, 2, n., *a sign, token.*  
 silentium, ii, 2, n., *silence.*  
 silva, æ, 1, f., *a wood.*  
 simia, æ, 1, f., *an ape.*  
 similis, e, *like, similar.*  
 simul, adv., *together, at the same time.*  
 sin, *but if, if not.*  
 sine, prep., *without.*  
 singultim, adv., *with sobs.*  
 sino, sivi, situm, 3, *I suffer.*  
 sive, conj., *whether, if, or if.*  
 socia, æ, 1, f., *a companion, a female partner.*  
 societas, tatis, 3, f., *society, company.*  
 socius, a, um, *social, belonging to allies.*  
 socius, ii, 2, m., *an ally, confederate.*  
 sol, lis, 3, m., *the sun.*  
 solemnus, or solennis, e, *solemn, annual, usual.*  
 soleo, ui and solitus sum, ere, *I am accustomed.*  
 solidus, a, um, *solid, the whole.*  
 sollicito, or sollicito, avi, atum, 1, *I solicit, importune, urge, press.*  
 solum, i, 2, n., *the soil, ground, a floor.*  
 solus, a, um, *alone, only.*  
 solvo, vi, lutum, 3, *I loosen, disengage.*  
 somnus, i, 2, m., *sleep.*  
 sonans, tis, part., *sounding, resounding.*  
 sono, nui, itum, 1, *I sound, resound.*  
 sopor, oris, 3, m., *sleep.*  
 soror, oris, 3, f., *a sister.*  
 sors, tis, 3, f., *a lot, chance, fortune.*

sortior, titus sum, iri, dep., *I cast, draw lots for, share.*  
 Spartacus, i, 2, m., *Spartacus.*  
 spatium, ii, 2, n., *space, extent.*  
 spelunca, æ, 1, f., *a cave.*  
 sperno, previ, pretum, 3, *I despise.*  
 spero, avi, atum, 1, *I hope.*  
 spes, ei, 5, f., *hope, expectation.*  
 spiritus, us, 4, m., *spirit, breath, the mind, the soul.*  
 spiro, avi, atum, 1, *I breathe.*  
 spolio, avi, atum, 1, *I spoil, rob.*  
 spolium, ii, 2, n., *spoil.*  
 sponsus, i, 2, m., *a bridegroom.*  
 stabilis, e, *firm, durable.*  
 statim, adv., *still.*  
 statuo, ui, utum, 3, *I set, place, appoint.*  
 status, us, 4, m., *a state, condition, position.*  
 sterto, tui, tere, 3, *I snore.*  
 Stoici, orum, 2, m., *the Stoics.*  
 stoicus, a, um, *stoical.*  
 stomachus, i, 2, m., *the stomach.*  
 stratus, a, um, part., *spread, laid down, prostrate.*  
 strenuus, a, um, *active, bold, resolute.*  
 strepitus, us, 4, m., *a noise, sound.*  
 stulte, adv., *foolishly.*  
 stultus, a, um, *foolish.*  
 suavis, e, *sweet, pleasant.*  
 suaviter, adv., *sweetly, agreeably.*  
 sub, prep., *under, up to.*  
 subeo, ivi, itum, irr., *I go under, undertake.*  
 subigo, egi, actum, *I bring under, subdue, compel.*  
 subvenio, veni, ventum, 4, *I help, relieve, succour.*  
 subverto, ti, sum, 3, *I subvert, turn upside down.*  
 subvolvo, volutum, ere, 3, *I roll up.*  
 succedo, essi, essum, 3, *I succeed, approach to.*  
 succurro, ri, rsum, 3, *I succour, help.*  
 sudo, avi, atum, 1, *I perspire.*  
 sui, pron, sing. and pl., *he, she, itself; they.*

sulcus, i, 2, m., *a furrow, trench.*  
 sum, fui, esse, *I am.*  
 summus, a, um, *highest, greatest.*  
 sumo, mpsi, ptum, 3, *I take.*  
 super, prep., *upon, beyond, above.*  
 superatus, a, um, part., *overcome.*  
 superbia, æ, 1, f., *pride; insolence, arrogance.*  
 superne, adv., *from above.*  
 supero, avi, atum, 1, *I conquer, surmount.*  
 superstitio, onis, 3, f., *superstition.*  
 superstito, avi, atum, 1, *I survive.*  
 superus, a, um, *above, upper.*  
 supplex, icis, *suppliant, humble.*  
 supplicium, ii, 2, n., *supplication, prayer, punishment.*  
 supra, prep., *above, beyond.*  
 surgo, rrexi, rrectum, 3, *I rise.*  
 suscipio, cepi, ceptum, 3, *I take, raise, receive.*  
 sustineo, nui, ntum, 2, *I hold up, sustain, support.*  
 suus, a, um, *his, hers, its.*  
 sylvā, or silva, æ, 1, f., *a wood.*  
 Syphax, acis, 3, m., *Syphax.*  
 syrtis, is, 3, f., *a whirlpool.*

## T.

taberna, æ, 1, f., *a shop, tavern.*  
 Tabraca, æ, 1, f., *a place in Africa.*  
 tacitus, a, um, *silent.*  
 Tagus, i, 2, m., *the Tagus.*  
 talis, e, *such.*  
 tam, adv., *so, so much.*  
 tamen, conj., *yet, notwithstanding.*  
 tandem, adv., *at length.*  
 tantum, adv., *so much.*  
 tantummodo, adv., *only.*  
 tantus, a, um, *so much, so great.*  
 tardus, a, um, *slow.*  
 Tarentum, i, 2, n., *Tarentum.*  
 Taurus, i, 2, m., *Mount Taurus, a bull.*  
 tectum, i, 2, n., *a roof, a house, a covering.*  
 tecto, xi, ctum, 3, *I cover, protect.*

tegula, æ, 1, f., *a tile.*  
 tellus, uris, 3, f., *the earth.*  
 telum, i, 2, n., *a weapon, dart.*  
 temere, adv., *rashly, at random.*  
 tempestas, tatis, 3, f., *a tempest, time, storm.*  
 tempus, oris, 3, n., *time, opportunity.*  
 tenax, acis, *tenacious, holding fast.*  
 tendo, tetendi, nsum and ntum, 3, *I stretch, hold, extend.*  
 teneo, ui, ntum, 2, *I hold, keep, keep back.*  
 tener, era, erum, *tender.*  
 tentandus, a, um, part., *to be tried, attempted.*  
 tento, avi, atum, 1, *I try, attempt.*  
 tenuis, e, *small, thin, slender.*  
 ter, adv., *thrice, three times.*  
 tero, trivi, tritum, 3, *I rub, bruise, waste, spend.*  
 terra, æ, 1, f., *the earth.*  
 terreo, ui, itum, 2, *I frighten, affright.*  
 terribilis, e, *terrible, dreadful.*  
 terror, oris, 3, m., *terror, dread.*  
 testa, æ, 1, f., *an earthen pot, jar.*  
 testamentum, i, 2, n., *a testament, a will.*  
 testimonium, ii, 2, n., *testimony, a proof.*  
 testis, is, 3, m. and f., *a witness.*  
 testor, atus sum, ari, dep., *I bear witness.*  
 teter, ra, rum, *horrible, foul, hideous.*  
 Teucri, orum, 2, m. and f., *the Trojans.*  
 thalamus, i, 2, m., *a bedchamber, marriage.*  
 Thrace, es, f. (Greek declension), *Thrace.*  
 timeo, ui, ere, 2, *I fear.*  
 timidus, a, um, *fearful, anxious.*  
 timor, oris, 3, m., *fear.*  
 Tithonius, ii, 2, m., *Tithonius.*  
 tolero, avi, atum, 1, *I support, tolerate, endure.*  
 tollo, sustuli, sublatum, 3, *I take, lift up.*

tot, indecl., *so many*.  
 totus, a, um, *the whole*.  
 tractabilis, e, *tractable, gentle*.  
 trado, didi, ditum, 3, *I deliver, hand over*.  
 tranquillus, a, um, *tranquil, quiet*.  
 trans, prep., *beyond, over*.  
 transno, avi, atum, 1, *I swim over*.  
 Trebatius, ii, 2, m., *Trebatius*.  
 trecenti, æ, a, *three hundred*.  
 tremens, tis, *trembling*.  
 tremo, ui, ere, *I tremble*.  
 trepidus, a, um, *trembling*.  
 tres, ia, *three*.  
 tribunus, i, 2, m., *a tribune*.  
 trigemini, æ, a, *three born at one birth*.  
 tristis, e, *sad, gloomy*.  
 triumvir, i, 2, m., *a triumvir, one of three in office*.  
 Troja, æ, 1, f., *Troy*.  
 tu, tui, pron., *thou*.  
 Tullianum, i, 2, n., *the name of a prison in Rome*.  
 Tullus, i, 2, m., *Tullus*.  
 tum, adv., *then*.  
 tum, conj., *both, as well as*.  
 tumidus, a, um, *swollen, proud, haughty*.  
 tumultus, us, 4, m., *a tumult, disturbance*.  
 tunc, adv., *then*.  
 turbidus, a, um, *turbid, muddy, troublesome*.  
 turdus, i, 2, m., *a thrush*.  
 turma, æ, 1, f., *a troop of horse, a company*.  
 turpis, e, *base*.  
 turris, is, 3, f., *a tower*.  
 tutus, a, um, *safe*.  
 tuus, a, um, pron., *thy, thine*.  
 tyrannus, i, 2, m., *a tyrant*.  
 Tyrius, a, um, *Tyrian*.  
 Tyrus, i, 2, f., *Tyre*.

U.

ubi, adv., *where, when*.  
 ullus, a, um, *any*.

ulterior, us, *farther*.  
 ultimus, a, um, *last, utmost, farthest*.  
 ultra, prep., *beyond*.  
 ultrix, icis, *avenging*.  
 umbra, æ, 1, f., *a shade, shadow*.  
 Umbrenus, i, 2, m., *Umbrenus*.  
 umbrifer, a, um, *casting a shadow*.  
 una, adv., *together with*.  
 unctus, a, um, part., *anointed*.  
 unda, æ, 1, f., *a wave, water*.  
 unde, adv., *from whence*.  
 undique, adv., *on every side*.  
 undo, avi, atum, 1, *I rise in waves, boil over*.  
 ungo, or unguo, nxi, nctum, 3, *I anoint*.  
 ungula, æ, 1, f., *a nail, hoof*.  
 unicus, a, um, *one alone, single, only, excellent*.  
 unquam, adv., *ever*.  
 unus, a, um, *one*.  
 urbs, bis, 3, f., *a city*.  
 urgeo, or urgueo, rsi, rsum, 2, *I urge*.  
 usquam, adv., *any where*.  
 usque, adv., *always, continually*.  
 usus, us, 4, m., *use, practice, experience*.  
 ut, adv. and conj., *that, as, when*.  
 uter, tra, trum, *which, whether of the two*.  
 uti, adv., *that, in order that*.  
 utilis, e, *useful*.  
 utinam, adv., or interj., *O that! I wish*.  
 utor, usus sum, uti, dep., *I use, enjoy*.  
 utrinque, adv., *on both sides*.  
 uvidus, a, um, *moist, in cups*.  
 uxor, oris, 3, f., *a wife*.

V.

vaco, avi, are, 1, *I am empty, void, want*.  
 vacuus, a, um, *empty, vain*.  
 vado, si, sum, 3, *I go, march, move*.

- valeo, ui, litum, 2, *I am well, in good health, am strong.*  
 Valerius, ii, 2, m., *Valerius.*  
 vallis, is, 3, f., *a valley.*  
 vanus, a, um, *vain, empty.*  
 varie, adv., *variously, in different ways, at several times.*  
 varius, a, um, *various, several.*  
 Varius, ii, 2, m., *Varius.*  
 vas, adis, 3, m., *a surety, bail.*  
 vas, vasis, 3, n., *a vessel.*  
 vasto, avi, atum, 1, *I lay waste, spoil.*  
 ve, conj., *or, either.*  
 vecto, avi, atum, 1, *I carry.*  
 veho, xi, ctum, 3, *I bear, carry.*  
 vel, conj., *or, even.*  
 velum, i, 2, n., *a veil, covering.*  
 velut, adv., *as, even as, as if.*  
 vena, æ, 1, f., *a vein, natural humour.*  
 venalis, e, *to be sold, venal.*  
 venia, æ, 1, f., *pardon.*  
 venio, i, ntum, 4, *I come.*  
 venter, tris, 3, m., *the belly, stomach.*  
 ventus, i, 2, m., *the wind.*  
 Venus, eris, 3, f., *Venus, beauty.*  
 ver, ris, 3, n., *the spring.*  
 verbero, avi, atum, 1, *I beat, whip, scourge.*  
 verbum, i, 2, n., *a word.*  
 vereor, ritus sum, eri, dep., *I fear, stand in awe.*  
 veritas, tatis, 3, f., *truth.*  
 veritus, a, um, *fearing.*  
 vero, adv. and conj., *truly, but.*  
 versor, atus sum, ari, dep., *I am turned, conversant with.*  
 versus, a, um, part., *turned.*  
 versus, us, 4, m., *a verse, turning.*  
 versus, prep., *toward.*  
 verto, ti, rsum, 3, *I turn.*  
 verum, i, 2, n., *truth.*  
 verum, conj., *but.*  
 verus, a, um, *true.*  
 vester, tra, trum, pron., *your.*  
 vestibulum, i, 2, n., *a porch, entry.*  
 vestras, atis, pron., *of your country.*  
 vetulus, a, um, *oldish, stale.*  
 vetulus, i, 2, m., *an old man.*  
 vetus, eris, *old.*  
 via, æ, 1, f., *a way.*  
 viator, oris, 3, m. and f., *a traveler.*  
 vicissitudo, inis, 3, f., *vicissitude, a change.*  
 victor, oris, 3, m., *a conqueror.*  
 victoria, æ, 1, f., *victory.*  
 video, idi, isum, 2, *I see.*  
 videor, visus sum, videri, dep., *I seem.*  
 viduus, a, um, *deprived of, bereaved.*  
 vigilo, are, 1, *I watch.*  
 vilis, e, *cheap, vile.*  
 vinclum, or vinculum, i, 2, n., *a chain, tie.*  
 vinosus, a, um, *like wine, drunken.*  
 vinum, i, 2, n., *wine.*  
 violens, tis, *violent, vehement.*  
 violentia, æ, 1, f., *violence.*  
 vir, ri, 2, m., *a man, husband.*  
 Virgilius, ii, 2, m., *Virgil.*  
 virgo, inis, 3, f., *a virgin.*  
 virtus, utis, 3, f., *virtue.*  
 vis, vim, vi; pl. vires, virium, viribus, 3, f., *violence, force, authority.*  
 viscera, um, 3, n., *the bowels, entrails.*  
 viso, isi, isum, 3, *I go to see, visit.*  
 visus, a, um, part., *seen.*  
 visus, us, 4, m., *the sight, vision.*  
 vita, æ, 1, f., *life.*  
 vitiosus, a, um, *vicious, wicked, depraved.*  
 vitis, is, 3, f., *a vine.*  
 vitium, ii, 2, n., *vice.*  
 vivo, ixi, ictum, 3, *I live.*  
 vivus, a, um, *living, alive.*  
 vix, adv., *scarcely.*  
 volito, avi, atum, 1, *I fly about.*  
 volo, ui, velle, irreg., *I wish.*  
 volo, avi, atum, 1, *I fly.*  
 voluntas, tatis, 3, f., *the will, wish, pleasure.*



volvo, vi, lutum, 3, *I roll, turn over, revolve.*  
 voluptas, tatis, 3, f., *delight, sensuality.*  
 votum, i, 2, n., *a wish, vow.*  
 vox, vocis, 3, f., *a voice.*  
 vulgus, i, 2, n., *the vulgar people.*  
 vulnus, eris, 3, n., *a wound.*

vultus, us, 4, m., *the countenance.*

Z.

Zephyrus, i, 2, m., *the west wind.*

THE END.



Works

PUBLISHED BY MR. WEALE.

---

USEFUL TO EXPERIMENTERS AND LECTURERS:

A SYSTEM OF APPARATUS

FOR THE

USE OF LECTURERS AND EXPERIMENTERS

IN

MECHANICAL PHILOSOPHY.

BY THE REV. ROBERT WILLIS, F.R.S.,

Jacksonian Professor of Natural and Experimental Philosophy in the  
University of Cambridge.

*\*\* For Contents of Work see other side.*

WITH THREE PLATES, CONTAINING FIFTY-ONE FIGURES.

Price 5s.

## CONTENTS.

## ARTICLE

1. Introductory Remarks.

## CHAP. I.—WHEELS AND STUD-SOCKETS.

2. System consists of certain definite parts.
3. Toothed-wheels and other revolving pieces.
4. Key-grooves.
5. Stud-sockets and Collars (figs. 8, 10, 12).  
*Note.*—Double Socket (fig. 9).
6. Stud-sockets of peculiar form (fig. 1<sup>st</sup>).
7. Stud-sockets of peculiar form (fig. 11).

## CHAP. II.—FRAME-WORK PIECES.

8. Frame-work.
9. Advantages of Studs.
10. Brackets (figs. 1 to 6).
11. Coach-bolts.  
*Note.*—Clamps (fig. 7).
12. Slit Tables (fig. 16).
13. Sole-blocks (fig. 17).
14. Beds (fig. 20).
15. Rectangles (fig. 19).
16. Examples of Frames. Base-board (fig. 18).
17. Stools (figs. 23 to 26).
18. Posts.
19. Loops (fig. 22).
20. Positions of the Studs and Brackets.
21. Guide-pulleys.
22. Tripod-stretcher.

## CHAP. III.—SHAFTS AND TUBE-FITTINGS.

23. Mounting of Shafts.
24. Shafts in carriages (figs. 35, 36, 37).
25. Shafts in Tube-fittings (figs. 29, 39).
26. Shaft-rings.

## ARTICLE

27. Shafts between centre-screws.
28. Adapters (fig. 33).
29. Pinned Shaft-rings (fig. 30).
30. Flanch (fig. 32).
31. Lever Arm or Handle (fig. 34.)
32. Sets of pieces in definite sizes.  
*Note on Bolts.*
33. Short Shafts in single bearings.
34. Example—Link-work (fig. 40).
35. Other Mountings of short Shafts (fig. 21).
36. Many independent pieces on a common axis.
37. Example—Ferguson's Paradox (fig. 41).
38. Remarks.
39. Recapitulations.  
*Note on Professor Farish's method.*

## CHAP. IV.—APPLICATIONS OF THE SYSTEM.

40. System applied to four purposes (as follows):
41. 1st, *Elementary Combinations.*  
Example—
42. Roëmer's Wheels (fig. 42).
43. 2nd, *Models of Machines.*  
Examples—
44. Repeating Clock (figs. 43, 44).
45. Parallel Motion Curves (fig. 45).
46. Equatorial Clock (figs. 47 to 50).
47. Friction Machine (fig. 46).
48. Models in which the general principles of the system are applicable.
49. Looms.
50. Rope-making Machinery.
51. Organ.
52. 3rd, *Fitting up of Apparatus for Mechanical Philosophy* (figs. 31, 27, 28).
53. Use of Paste-board.
54. Shears (fig. 51).
55. 4th, *Trial of original contrivances.*



---

In One Large Volume Octavo, Eleven Hundred Pages, with numerous  
Engravings, price 1*l.* 8*s.*,

# A GENERAL TEXT BOOK,

FOR THE

CONSTANT USE AND REFERENCE OF

ARCHITECTS, ENGINEERS, SURVEYORS, SOLICITORS,  
AUCTIONEERS, LAND AGENTS, AND STEWARDS,

IN ALL THEIR SEVERAL AND VARIED PROFESSIONAL OCCUPATIONS;

AND FOR THE

ASSISTANCE AND GUIDANCE OF

## COUNTRY GENTLEMEN AND OTHERS

ENGAGED IN THE

TRANSFER, MANAGEMENT, OR IMPROVEMENT OF  
LANDED PROPERTY:

CONTAINING

### THEOREMS, FORMULÆ, RULES, AND TABLES

IN GEOMETRY, MENSURATION, AND TRIGONOMETRY; LAND MEASURING, SURVEYING,  
AND LEVELLING; RAILWAY AND HYDRAULIC ENGINEERING; TIMBER MEASURING;  
THE VALUATION OF ARTIFICERS' WORK, ESTATES, LEASEHOLDS, LIFEHOLDS,  
ANNUITIES, TILLAGES, FARMING STOCK, AND TENANT RIGHT; THE ASSESSMENT  
OF PARISHES, RAILWAYS, GAS AND WATER WORKS; THE LAW OF DILAPIDATIONS  
AND NUISANCES, APPRAISEMENTS AND AUCTIONS, LANDLORD AND  
TENANT, AGREEMENTS AND LEASES.

TOGETHER WITH EXAMPLES OF VILLAS AND COUNTRY HOUSES.

BY EDWARD RYDE,

Civil Engineer and Land Surveyor, Author of several Professional Works.

TO WHICH ARE ADDED SEVERAL CHAPTERS ON

### AGRICULTURE AND LANDED PROPERTY.

BY PROFESSOR DONALDSON,

Author of several Works on Agriculture.

## CONTENTS

**CHAPTER I.—ARITHMETIC.** 1. Notation—2. Proof of the First Four Rules—3. Vulgar Fractions—4. Decimals—5. Duodecimals—6. Powers and Roots—7. Properties of Numbers—8. Logarithms and Mathematical Tables.

**II.—PLANE AND SOLID GEOMETRY.** 1. Definitions—2. Of Angles and Right Lines, and their Rectangles—3. Of Triangles—4. Of Quadrilaterals and Polygons—5. Of the Circle, and Inscribed and Circumscribing Figures—6. Of Planes and Solids—7. Practical Geometry.

**III.—MENSURATION.** 1. Comparison of English and French Weights and Measures—2. Mensuration of Superficies—3. Mensuration of Solids.

**IV.—TRIGONOMETRY.** 1. Definitions and Trigonometrical Formulæ—2. General Propositions—3. Solution of the Cases of Plane Triangles.

**V.—CONIC SECTIONS.**

**VI.—LAND MEASURING.** Including Table of Decimals of an Acre—Table of Land Measure, by dimensions taken in yards.

**VII.—LAND SURVEYING.** 1. Parish and Estate Surveying—2. Trigonometrical Surveying—3. Traverse Surveying—4. Field Instruments, the Prismatic Compass; the Box Sextant; the Theodolite.

**VIII.—LEVELLING.** Levelling Instruments, the Spirit Level; the Y Level; Troughton's Level; Mr. Gravatt's Level; Levelling Staves—Examples in Levelling.

**IX.—PLOTTING.** Embracing the Circular Protractor—The T Square and Semicircular Protractor—Plotting Sections.

**X.—COMPUTATION OF AREAS.** The Pedometer—The Computing Scale—Computing Tables.

**XI.—COPYING MAPS.** Including a description of the Pentagraph.

**XII.—RAILWAY SURVEYING.** 1. Exploration and Trial Levels; Standing Orders.—2. Proceedings subsequent to the Passing of the Act; Tables for Setting out Curves; Tables for Setting out Slopes; Tables of Relative Gradients; Specification of Works to be executed in the construction of a Railway; Form of Tender.

**XIII.—COLONIAL SURVEYING.**

**XIV.—HYDRAULICS IN CONNECTION WITH DRAINAGE, SEWERAGE, AND WATER SUPPLY.**—With Synopsis of Ryde's Hydraulic Tables—Specifications, Iron Pipes and Castings; Stone-Ware Drain Pipes; Pipe Laying; Reservoir.

**XV.—TIMBER MEASURING.** Including Timber Tables, Solid Measure, Unequal Sided Timber; Superficial Measure.

**XVI.—ARTIFICERS' WORK.** 1. Bricklayers' and Excavators'—2. Slaters'—3. Carpenters' and Joiners'—4. Sawyers'—5. Stonemasons'—6. Plasterers'—7. Ironmongers'—8. Painters'—9. Glaziers'—10. Paper Hangers'.

**XVII.—VALUATION OF ESTATES.** With Tables for the Purchasing of Freehold, Copyhold, or Leasehold Estates, Annuities, and Advowsons, and for Renewing Leases for Terms of Years certain and for Lives.

**XVIII.—VALUATION OF TILLAGES AND TENANT RIGHT.** With Tables for Measuring and Valuing Hay Ricks.

CONTENTS (*continued*):—

XIX.—VALUATION OF PARISHES.

XX.—BUILDERS' PRICES. 1. Carpenters' and Joiners'—2. Masons'—3. Bricklayers'—4. Plasterers'—5. Ironmongers'—6. Drainers'—7. Plumbers'—8. Painters'—9. Paper Hangers' and Decorators'—10. Glaziers'—11. Zinc Workers'—12. Coppersmiths'—13. Wireworkers'.

XXI.—DILAPIDATIONS AND NUISANCES. 1. General Definitions—2. Dilapidations by Tenants for Life and Years—3. Ditto by Mortgagee or Mortgagor—4. Ditto of Party Walls and Fences—5. Ditto of Highways and Bridges—6. Nuisances.

XXII.—THE LAW RELATING TO APPRAISERS AND AUCTIONEERS. 1. The Law relating to Appraisements—2. The Law of Auction.

XXIII.—LANDLORD AND TENANT. 1. Agreements and Leases—2. Notice to Quit—3. Distress—4. Recovery of Possession.

XXIV.—TABLES. Of Natural Sines and Cosines—For Reducing Links into Feet—Decimals of a Pound Sterling.

XXV.—STAMP LAWS.—Stamp Duties—Customs' Duties.

---

EXAMPLES OF VILLAS AND COUNTRY HOUSES.

---

ON LANDED PROPERTY, BY PROFESSOR DONALDSON.

---

I.—Landlord and Tenant—their Position and Connections.

II.—Lease of Land, Conditions, and Restrictions; Choice of Tenant and Assignment of the Deed.

III.—Cultivation of Land, and Rotation of Crops.

IV.—Buildings necessary on Cultivated Lands—Dwelling Houses, Farmeries, and Cottages for Labourers.

V.—Laying-out Farms, Roads, Fences, and Gates.

VI.—Plantations—Young and old Timber.

VII.—Meadows and Embankments, Beds of Rivers, Water Courses, and Flooded Grounds.

VIII.—Land Draining, Open and Covered,—Plan, Execution, and Arrangement between Landlord and Tenant.

IX.—Minerals—Working and Value.

X.—Expenses of an Estate—Regulations of Disbursements—and Relation of the appropriate Expenditures.

XI.—Valuation of Landed Property; of the Soil, of Houses, of Woods, of Minerals, of Manorial Rights, of Royalties, and of Fee Farm Rents.

XII.—Land Steward and Farm Bailiff: Qualifications and Duties.

XIII.—Manor Bailiff, Woodreve, Gardener, and Gamekeeper—their Position and Duties.

XIV.—Fixed days of Audit—Half-Yearly Payments of Rents—Form of Notices, Receipts, and of Cash Books, General Map of Estates, and of each separate Farm—Concluding Observations.

THE  
ART OF PHOTOGRAPHY:

INSTRUCTIONS IN THE

ART OF PRODUCING PHOTOGRAPHIC PICTURES  
IN ANY COLOUR, AND ON ANY MATERIAL,

FOR THE USE OF BEGINNERS;

AND ALSO OF PERSONS WHO HAVE ALREADY ATTAINED SOME PROFICIENCY IN  
THE ART; AND OF ENGRAVERS ON COPPER, STONE, WOOD, ETC.

BY DR. G. C. HERMANN HALLEUR,  
*Late* Director of the Royal Technical School at Bochum.

WITH PRACTICAL HINTS  
ON THE LOCALE BEST SUITED FOR PHOTOGRAPHIC OPERATIONS,  
AND ON THE PROPER POSTURE, ATTITUDE, AND  
DRESS FOR PORTRAITURE.

BY F. SCHUBERT,  
Painter.

*And an Appendix*

CONTAINING BRIEF EXPLANATIONS OF SOME OF THE CHEMICAL  
TERMS WHICH OCCASIONALLY OCCUR IN THE WORK.

TRANSLATED FROM THE GERMAN

BY G. L. STRAUSS, PH. DR.

With Woodcuts. Price 1s.



*In Folio, with 100 Engravings, price 100 Francs French,  
or Four Pounds sterling.*

---

# ANCIENT SMITHERY

OF

GOLD, SILVER, COPPER, AND IRON,

MEASURED AND DRAWN

*From Ancient Models,*

AND COMPRISED IN

ONE HUNDRED FULL-PAGED EXAMPLES,

WITH

**AMPLE DETAILS OF THE MIDDLE AGE.**

EXAMPLES FOR INTERIOR DECORATIONS FOR DOMESTIC AND  
ECCLESIASTICAL PURPOSES.

---

JUST ISSUED AT BRUGES,

AND NOW SOLD BY

JOHN WEALE,

59, HIGH HOLBORN.

## NEWLY-IMPORTED WORKS FROM FRANCE

ON

## DESIGN IN ART.

---

THE following very superior Works, which are elaborately illustrated by Engravings, show, by educational means, the correct mode of Instruction in Design for elementary purposes, and for practice in drawing accurately, with elegance of style, in the Fine and Useful Arts.

To the Trustees of Government Schools of Design, Mechanic Institutes, Institutions of Civil and Mechanical Engineers, and to Professional Men, the following list is especially addressed.

---

---

I.

**COURS ÉLÉMENTAIRES DE LAVIS APPLIQUÉ**  
À L'ARCHITECTURE. Folio volume, containing 40 elaborately engraved plates, in Shadows and Colours, very finely executed by the best artists of France. Price 2*l.* Paris, 50*f.*

II.

**COURS ÉLÉMENTAIRES DE LAVIS APPLIQUÉ**  
À MÉCANIQUE. Folio volume, containing 40 elaborately engraved plates, in Shadows and Colours, very finely executed by the best artists of France. Price 2*l.* Paris, 50*f.*

III.

**COURS ÉLÉMENTAIRES DE LAVIS APPLIQUÉ**  
À ORNEMENTATION. Folio volume, containing 20 elaborately engraved plates, in Shadows and Colours, very finely executed by the best artists of France. Price 1*l.* Paris, 25*f.*

IV.

**ÉTUDES PROGRESSIVES ET COMPLÉTES**  
D'ARCHITECTURE ET DE LAVIS. Par J. B. TRIPON. Large folio, 24 fine plates, comprising the orders of Architecture, Mouldings with Profiles, Ornaments, and Forms of their Proportion, Art of Shadowing Doors, Balusters, Parterres, &c. &c. &c. Price 1*l.* 4*s.* Paris, 36*f.*

V.

**SPECIMENS FOR DRAWING, SHADOWING,**  
AND ELABORATING THE EXTERIOR AND INTERIOR OF  
HOUSES, drawn on a large scale in large Atlas folio, consisting of Style Renaissance—Old French, Modern French, Italian, Venetian, English, and Parisian. 12 plates, very finely executed. Price 15*s.* Paris, 20*f.*

# NEW [AND PERMANENT] LIST OF WORKS

PUBLISHED BY

JOHN WEALE, 59, HIGH HOLBORN, LONDON.

---

## SERIES OF RUDIMENTARY WORKS

FOR THE USE OF BEGINNERS.

---

1854.

1. CHEMISTRY, by Prof. Fownes, F.R.S., including Agricultural Chemistry, for the use of Farmers. 4th edition . . . . . 1s.
2. NATURAL PHILOSOPHY, by Charles Tomlinson. 2nd edition . . . . . 1s.
3. GEOLOGY, by Lieut.-Col. Portlock, F.R.S., &c. 2nd edition . . . . . 1s. 6d.
- 4, 5. MINERALOGY, by D. Varley, 2 vols. 2nd edition . . . . . 2s.
6. MECHANICS, by Charles Tomlinson. 2nd edition . . . . . 1s.
7. ELECTRICITY, by Sir William Snow Harris, F.R.S. 3rd edition . . . . . 1s. 6d.
- 8, 9, 10. MAGNETISM, by the same, 3 vols. . . . . 3s. 6d.
- 11, 11\* ELECTRIC TELEGRAPH, History of the, by E. Highton, C.E., double Part . . . . . 2s.
12. PNEUMATICS, by Charles Tomlinson. 2nd edition . . . . . 1s.
- 13, 14, 15. CIVIL ENGINEERING, by Henry Law, C.E., 3 vols.; and 15\* Supplement . . . . . 4s. 6d.
16. ARCHITECTURE (Orders of), by W. H. Leeds. 2nd edition . . . . . 1s.
17. ARCHITECTURE (Styles of), by T. Bury, Architect. 2nd edition, with additional cuts . . . . . 1s. 6d.
- 18, 19. ARCHITECTURE (Principles of Design in), by E. L. Garbett, Architect, 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
- 20, 21. PERSPECTIVE, by G. Pyne, Artist, 2 vols. 3rd edition . . . . . 2s.
22. BUILDING, Art of, by E. Dobson, C.E. 2nd edition . . . . . 1s.
- 23, 24. BRICK-MAKING, TILE-MAKING, &c., Art of, by the same, 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
- 25, 26. MASONRY AND STONE-CUTTING, Art of, by the same, with illustrations of the preceding, in 16 4to. atlas plates . . . . . 2s.
- 27, 28. PAINTING, Art of, or a GRAMMAR OF COLOURING, by George Field, Esq., 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
29. DRAINING DISTRICTS AND LANDS, Art of, by G. R. Dempsey, C.E. . . . . 1s.
30. DRAINING AND SEWAGE OF TOWNS AND BUILDINGS, Art of, by G. R. Dempsey, C.E. . . . . 1s.
31. WELL-SINKING AND BORING, Art of, by G. R. Burnell, C.E. 2nd edition . . . . . 1s.
32. USE OF INSTRUMENTS, Art of the, by J. F. Heather, M.A. 3rd edition . . . . . 1s.
33. CONSTRUCTING CRANES, Art of, by J. Glynn, F.R.S., C.E. . . . . 1s.
34. STEAM ENGINE, Treatise on the, by Dr. Lardner . . . . . 1s.
35. BLASTING ROCKS AND QUARRYING, AND ON STONE, Art of, by Lieut.-Gen. Sir J. Burgoyne, K.C.B., R.E. 2nd edition . . . . . 1s.

## RUDIMENTARY WORKS.

- 36, 37, 38, 39. **DICTIONARY OF TERMS** used by Architects, Builders, Civil and Mechanical Engineers, Surveyors, Artists, Ship-builders, &c., 4 vols. . . . . 4s.
40. **GLASS-STAINING, Art of**, by Dr. M. A. Gessert . . . . . 1s.
41. **PAINTING ON GLASS, Essay on**, by E. O. Fromberg . . . . . 1s.
42. **COTTAGE BUILDING, Treatise on**, 2nd edition . . . . . 1s.
43. **TUBULAR AND GIRDER BRIDGES, and others, Treatise on**, more particularly describing the Britannia and Conway Bridges, with Experiments . . . . . 1s.
44. **FOUNDATIONS, &c., Treatise on**, by E. Dobson, C.E. . . . . 1s.
45. **LIMES, CEMENTS, MORTARS, CONCRETE, MASTICS, &c., Treatise on**, by Geo. R. Burnell, C.E. . . . . 1s.
46. **CONSTRUCTING AND REPAIRING COMMON ROADS, Treatise on the Art of**, by H. Law, C.E. . . . . 1s.
- 47, 48, 49. **CONSTRUCTION AND ILLUMINATION OF LIGHTHOUSES, Treatise on the**, by Alan Stevenson, C.E., 3 vols. . . . . 3s.
50. **LAW OF CONTRACTS FOR WORKS AND SERVICES, Treatise on the**, by David Gibbons, Esq. . . . . 1s.
- 51, 52, 53. **NAVAL ARCHITECTURE, Principles of the Science, Treatise on**, by J. Peake, N.A., 3 vols. . . . . 3s.
54. **MASTING, MAST-MAKING, AND RIGGING OF SHIPS, Treatise on**, by R. Kipping, N.A. . . . . 1s. 6d.
- 55, 56. **NAVIGATION, Treatise on: THE SAILOR'S SEA-BOOK.—How to keep the log and work it off—Latitude and longitude—Great Circle Sailing—Law of Storms and Variable Winds; and an Explanation of Terms used, with coloured illustrations of Flags**, 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
- 57, 58. **WARMING AND VENTILATION, Treatise on the Principles of the Art of**, by Chas. Tomlinson, 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
59. **STEAM BOILERS, Treatise on**, by R. Armstrong, C.E. . . . . 1s.
- 60, 61. **LAND AND ENGINEERING SURVEYING, Treatise on**, by T. Baker, C.E., 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
62. **RAILWAY DETAILS, Introductory Sketches of**, by R. M. Stephenson, C.E. . . . . 1s.
- 63, 64, 65. **AGRICULTURAL BUILDINGS, Treatise on the Construction of, on Motive Powers, and the Machinery of the Steading; and on Agricultural Field Engines, Machines, and Implements**, by G. H. Andrews, 3 vols. . . . . 3s.
66. **CLAY LANDS AND LOAMY SOILS, Treatise on**, by Prof. Donaldson, A.E. . . . . 1s.
- 67, 68. **CLOCK AND WATCH-MAKING, AND ON CHURCH CLOCKS, Treatise on**, by E. B. Denison, M.A., 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
- 69, 70. **MUSIC, Practical Treatise on**, by C. C. Spencer, 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
71. **PIANO-FORTE, Instruction for Playing the**, by the same . . . . . 1s.
- 72, 73, 74, 75. **RECENT FOSSIL SHELLS, Treatise (A Manual of the Mollusca) on**, by Samuel P. Woodward, and illustrations, 4 vols. . . . . 4s.
- 76, 77. **DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY, Treatise on**, by J. F. Heather, M.A., 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
- 77\*. **ECONOMY OF FUEL, Treatise on**, particularly with reference to Reverberatory Furnaces for the Manufacture of Iron and Steam Boilers, by T. S. Prideaux, Esq. . . . . 1s.



## RUDIMENTARY WORKS.

- 78, 79. STEAM AS APPLIED TO GENERAL PURPOSES AND LOCOMOTIVE ENGINES, Treatise on, by J. Sewell, C.E., 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
- 79\* RUDIMENTARY WORK ON PHOTOGRAPHY, containing full instructions in the Art of producing Photographic Pictures on any material and in any colour; and also Tables of the Composition and Properties of the Chemical Substances used in the several Photographic Processes. By Dr. H. Halleur, of Berlin. Translated from the German, by the advice of Baron A. von Humboldt, by Dr. Strauss 1s.
- 80, 81. MARINE ENGINES, AND ON THE SCREW, &c., Treatise on, by R. Murray, C.E., 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
- 80\*, 81\*. EMBANKING LANDS FROM THE SEA, the Practice of, treated as a Means of Profitable Employment of Capital, by John Wiggins, F.G.S., Land Agent and Surveyor, 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
- 82, 82\*. POWER OF WATER, AS APPLIED TO DRIVE FLOUR-MILLS, Treatise on the, by Joseph Glynn, F.R.S., C.E. . . . . 2s.
83. BOOK-KEEPING, Treatise on, by James Haddon, M.A. . . . . 1s.
- 82\*\*, 83\*. COAL GAS, Practical Treatise on the Manufacture and Distribution of, by Samuel Hughes, C.E., 3 vols. . . . . 3s.
- 83\*\*. CONSTRUCTION OF LOCKS, Treatise on the, with illustrations . 1s. 6d.
- 83 bis. PRINCIPLES OF THE FORMS OF SHIPS AND BOATS, by W. Bland, Esq. . . . . 1s.
84. ARITHMETIC, Elementary Treatise on, the Theory, and numerous Examples for Practice, and for Self-Examination, by Prof. J. R. Young 1s. 6d.
- 84\*. KEY to the above, by Prof. J. R. Young . . . . . 1s. 6d.
85. EQUATIONAL ARITHMETIC: Questions of Interest, Annuities, and General Commerce, by W. Hipsley, Esq. . . . . 1s.
- 86, 87. ALGEBRA, Elements of, for the use of Schools and Self-Instruction, by James Haddon, M.A., 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
- 88, 89. GEOMETRY, Principles of, by Henry Law, C.E., 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
90. GEOMETRY, ANALYTICAL, by James Hann . . . . . 1s.
- 91, 92. PLANE AND SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY, Treatises on, by the same, 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
93. MENSURATION, Elements and Practice of, by T. Baker, C.E. . . . . 1s.
- 94, 95. LOGARITHMS, Treatise on, and Tables for facilitating Astronomical, Nautical, Trigonometrical, and Logarithmic Calculations, by H. Law, C.E., 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
96. POPULAR ASTRONOMY, Elementary Treatise on, by the Rev. Robert Main, M.R.A.S. . . . . 1s.
97. STATICS AND DYNAMICS, Principles and Practice of, by T. Baker, C.E. 1s.
- 98, 98\*. MECHANISM, AND PRACTICAL CONSTRUCTION OF MACHINES, Elements of, by the same, 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
- 99, 100. NAUTICAL ASTRONOMY AND NAVIGATION, Theory and Practice of, by H. W. Jeans, R.N.C., Portsmouth, 2 vols. . . . . 2s.
101. DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS, by W. S. B. Woolhouse, F.R.A.S. . . . . 1s.
102. INTEGRAL CALCULUS, by Homersham Cox, M.A. . . . . 1s.
103. INTEGRAL CALCULUS, Collection of Examples of the, by James Hann 1s.
104. DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS, Collection of Examples of the, by J. Haddon, M.A. . . . . 1s.
105. ALGEBRA, GEOMETRY, AND TRIGONOMETRY, First Mnemonical Lessons in, by the Rev. Thomas Penyngton Kirkman, M.A. 1s. 6d.

**NEW SERIES OF EDUCATIONAL WORKS;**

OR

Volumes intended for Public Instruction and for Reference :

*Now in the course of Publication.*

THE public favour with which the Rudimentary Works on scientific subjects have been received induces the Publisher to commence a New Series, somewhat different in character, but which, it is hoped, may be found equally serviceable. The DICTIONARIES of the MODERN LANGUAGES are arranged for facility of reference, so that the English traveller on the Continent and the Foreigner in England may find in them an easy means of communication, although possessing but a slight acquaintance with the respective languages. They will also be found of essential service for the desk in the merchant's office and the counting-house, and more particularly to a numerous class who are anxious to acquire a knowledge of languages so generally used in mercantile and commercial transactions.

The want of small and concise GREEK and LATIN DICTIONARIES has long been felt by the younger students in schools, and by the classical scholar who requires a book that may be carried in the pocket; and it is believed that the present is the first attempt which has been made to offer a complete Lexicon of the Greek Language in so small a compass.

In the volumes on ENGLAND, GREECE and ROME, it is intended to treat of History as a Science, and to present in a connected view an analysis of the large and expensive works of the most highly valued historical writers. The extensive circulation of the preceding Series on the pure and applied Sciences amongst students, practical mechanics, and others, affords conclusive evidence of the desire of our industrious classes to acquire substantial knowledge, when placed within their reach; and this has induced the hope that the volumes on History will be found profitable not only in an intellectual point of view, but, which is of still higher importance, in the social improvement of the people; for without a knowledge of the principles of the English constitution, and of those events which have more especially tended to promote our commercial prosperity and political freedom, it is impossible that a correct judgment can be formed by the mass of the people of the measures best calculated to increase the national welfare, or of the character of men best qualified to represent them in Parliament; and this knowledge becomes indispensable in exact proportion as the elective franchise may be extended and the system of government become more under the influence of public opinion.

The scholastic application of these volumes has not been overlooked, and a comparison of the text with the examinations for degrees given, will show their applicability to the course of historic study pursued in the Universities of Cambridge and London.

- |       |  |         |
|-------|--|---------|
| 1, 2. | CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND, 2 vols., by W. D. Hamilton    | 2s.     |
| 3, 4. | _____ DOWN TO VICTORIA, by the<br>same . . . . .                 | 2s.     |
| 5.    | OUTLINE OF THE HISTORY OF GREECE, by the same . . . . .          | 1s.     |
| 6.    | _____ TO ITS BECOMING A ROMAN<br>PROVINCE, by the same . . . . . | 1s. 6d. |
| 7.    | OUTLINE HISTORY OF ROME, by the same . . . . .                   | 1s.     |
| 8.    | _____ TO THE DECLINE, by the same . . . . .                      | 1s.     |

## RUDIMENTARY WORKS.

- 9, 10. A CHRONOLOGY OF CIVIL AND ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY, LITERATURE, SCIENCE, AND ART, from the earliest time to a late period, 2 vols., by Edward Law. . . . . 2s.
11. GRAMMAR OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE, for use in Schools and for Private Instruction, by Hyde Clarke, Esq., D.C.L. . . . . 1s.
- 12, 13. DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. A new and compressed Dictionary of the English Tongue, as Spoken and Written, including above 100,000 words, or 50,000 more than in any existing work, and including 10,000 additional Meanings of Old Words, 2 vols. in 1, by the same . . . . . 2s. 6d.
14. GRAMMAR OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE, by H. C. Hamilton . . . . . 1s.
- 15, 16. DICTIONARY OF THE GREEK AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES, by H. R. Hamilton, 2 vols. in 1 . . . . . 2s.
- 17, 18. ————— ENGLISH AND GREEK LANGUAGES, 2 vols. in 1, by the same . . . . . 2s.
19. GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE . . . . . 1s.
- 20, 21. DICTIONARY OF THE LATIN AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES . . . . . 2s.
- 22, 23. ————— ENGLISH AND LATIN LANGUAGES . . . . . 2s.
24. GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, by Dr. Strauss, late Lecturer at Besançon . . . . . 1s.
25. DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES, by A. Elwes . . . . . 1s.
26. ————— ENGLISH AND FRENCH LANGUAGES, by the same . . . . . 1s.
27. GRAMMAR OF THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE, by the same . . . . . 1s.
- 28, 29. DICTIONARY OF THE ITALIAN, ENGLISH, AND FRENCH LANGUAGES, by the same . . . . . 1s.
- 30, 31. ————— ENGLISH, ITALIAN, AND FRENCH LANGUAGES, by the same . . . . . 1s.
- 32, 33. ————— FRENCH, ITALIAN, AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES, by the same . . . . . 1s.
34. GRAMMAR OF THE SPANISH LANGUAGE, by the same . . . . . 1s.
- 35, 36. DICTIONARY OF THE SPANISH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES, by the same . . . . . 2s.
- 37, 38. ————— ENGLISH AND SPANISH LANGUAGES, by the same . . . . . 2s.
39. GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE, by Dr. Strauss . . . . . 1s.
40. CLASSICAL GERMAN READER, from the best Authors, by the same . . . . . 1s.
- 41, 42, 43. DICTIONARIES OF THE ENGLISH, GERMAN, AND FRENCH LANGUAGES, by N. E. S. A. HAMILTON, 3 vols. . . . . 3s.
- 44, 45. DICTIONARY OF THE HEBREW AND ENGLISH AND ENGLISH AND HEBREW LANGUAGES, containing all the new Biblical and Rabbinical words, 2 vols. (together with the Grammar, which may be had separately for 1s.), by Dr. Bresslau, Hebrew Professor . . . . . 5s.

## SUPPLEMENTARY TO THE SERIES.

DOMESTIC MEDICINE ; or complete and comprehensive Instructions for Self-aid by simple and efficient Means for the Preservation and Restoration of Health ; originally written by M. Raspail, and now fully translated and adapted to the use of the British public. 1s. 6d.



**GREAT EXHIBITION BUILDING.**

The BUILDING erected in HYDE PARK for the  
**GREAT EXHIBITION** of the WORKS of  
**INDUSTRY** of ALL NATIONS, 1851:

Illustrated by 28 large folding Plates, embracing plans, elevations, sections, and details, laid down to a large scale from the working drawings of the Contractors, Messrs. FOX, HENDERSON, and Co., by CHARLES DOWNES, Architect; with a scientific description by CHARLES COWPER, C.E.

In 4 Parts, royal quarto, now complete, price £1. 10s.,  
 or in cloth boards, lettered, price £1. 11s. 6d.

\* \* \* This work has every measured detail so thoroughly made out as to enable the Engineer or Architect to erect a construction of a similar nature, either more or less extensive.

---

**SIR JOHN RENNIE'S WORK**

ON THE

**THEORY, FORMATION, AND CONSTRUCTION  
 OF BRITISH AND FOREIGN HARBOURS.**

Copious explanatory text, illustrated by numerous examples, 2 Vols., very neat  
 in half-morocco.

The history of the most ancient maritime nations affords conclusive evidence of the importance which they attached to the construction of secure and extensive Harbours, as indispensably necessary to the extension of commerce and navigation, and to the successful establishment of colonies in distant parts of the globe.

To this important subject, and more especially with reference to the vast extension of our commerce with foreign nations, the attention of the British Government has of late years been worthily directed; and as this may be reasonably expected to enhance the value of any information which may add to our existing stock of knowledge in a department of Civil Engineering as yet but imperfectly understood, its contribution at the present time may become generally useful to the Engineering Profession.

The Plates are executed by the best mechanical Engravers; the Views finely engraved under the direction of Mr. Pye: all the Engineering Plates have dimensions with every explanatory detail for professional use.



In octavo, cloth boards, price 9s.

## HYDRAULIC FORMULÆ, CO-EFFICIENTS, AND TABLES,

For finding the Discharge of Water from Orifices, Notches, Weirs, Short Tubes, Diaphragms, Mouth-pieces, Pipes, Drains, Streams, and Rivers.

BY JOHN NEVILLE,

ARCHITECT AND C. E., MEMBER ROYAL IRISH ACADEMY, MEMBER INST. C. E. IRELAND, MEMBER GEOLOGICAL SOC. IRELAND, COUNTY SURVEYOR OF LOUTH, AND OF THE COUNTY OF THE TOWN OF DROGHEDA.

This work contains above 150 different hydraulic formulæ (the Continental ones reduced to English measures), and the most extensive and accurate Tables yet published for finding the mean velocity of discharge from triangular, quadrilateral, and circular orifices, pipes, and rivers; with experimental results and co-efficients;—effects of friction; of the velocity of approach; and of curves, bends, contractions, and expansions;—the best form of channel;—THE DRAINAGE EFFECTS OF LONG AND SHORT WEIRS, AND WEIR-BASINS;—extent of back-water from weirs; contracted channels;—catchment basins;—hydrostatic and hydraulic pressure;—water-power, &c.

---

## TREDGOLD ON THE STEAM ENGINE.

Published in 74 Parts, price 2s. 6d. each, in 4to, illustrated by very numerous engravings and wood-cuts, a new and much extended edition, now complete in 3 vols. bound in 4, in elegant half-morocco, price Nine Guineas and a Half.

### THE STEAM ENGINE,

IN ITS PROGRESSIVE AND PRESENT STATE OF IMPROVEMENT;

Practically and amply elucidating, in every detail, its modifications and applications, its duties and consumption of fuel, with an investigation of its principles and the proportions of its parts for efficiency and strength; including examples of British and American recently constructed engines, with details, drawn to a large scale.

The well-known and highly appreciated Treatise, Mr. TREDGOLD'S national Work on the STEAM ENGINE, founded on scientific principles and compiled from the practice of the best makers—showing also easy rules for construction, and for the calculation of its power in all cases—has commanded a most extensive sale in the several English editions, and in Translations on the Continent. These editions being *now out of print*, the proprietor has been induced to

## TREDGOLD ON THE STEAM ENGINE.

enlarge and extend the present edition by practical examples of all kinds, with the most recent improvements in the construction and practical operations of the steam engine both at home and abroad.

The work is divided into the sections named below, either of which may be *purchased separately*: working engineers will be thus enabled to select those portions which more especially apply to the objects upon which they may be respectively employed.

Several scientific men, extensively and practically employed, have contributed original and really practical papers of the utmost utility; by which the value of this extended edition is much increased. A copious INDEX for reference is added.

DIVISION A. Locomotive Engines, 41 plates and 55 wood-cuts, complete, making Vol. I. In half-morocco binding, price £2. 12s. 6d.

DIVISION B. Marine Engines, British and American, numerous plates and wood-cuts, making Vol. II.; bound in 2 vols. half-morocco, price £3. 13s. 6d.

DIVISION C to G. making Vol. III., and completing the work, comprising Stationary Engines, Pumping Engines, Engines for Mills, and several examples of Boilers employed in the British Steam Navy; in half-morocco, price £3. 13s. 6d.

## LIST OF PLATES.

## DIVISION A.—LOCOMOTIVE ENGINES.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>Elevation of the 8-wheeled locomotive engine and tender, the IRON DUKE, on the Great Western Railway.</p> <p>Longitudinal section of ditto.</p> <p>Plan, ditto.</p> <p>Transverse sections, ditto.</p> <p>Details of ditto: transverse section through working gear, transverse section and end view of tender; plan and section of feed-pump; plan and elevation of hand-pump; details of inside framing, centre axle, driving axle-box, regulation-valve, centre-beam stay, &amp;c.</p> <p>Elevation of Crampton's patent locomotive engine and tender.</p> <p>Longitudinal section of ditto.</p> <p>Plan of ditto.</p> <p>Transverse sections of ditto.</p> <p>Elevation of the PYRAMON 6-wheeled goods' engine on the Great Western Railway.</p> <p>Half-plan of the working gear of ditto.</p> <p>Elevation of a portion of the working gear of ditto.</p> <p>Diagrams, by J. Scwell, L. E., of resistances per ton of the train; and portion of engines of the class of the</p> | <p>GREAT BRITAIN locomotive, including tender, with various loads and at various velocities; also of the additional resistance in lbs. per ton of the train, when the engine is loaded, to be added to the resistance per ton of the engine and tender when unloaded.</p> <p>Side and front elevation of an express carriage engine, introduced on the Eastern Counties Railway by James Samuel, C. E., Resident Engineer.</p> <p>Longitudinal and cross section of ditto.</p> <p>Plan of ditto; with plan and section of cylinders, details and sections, piston full size.</p> <p>Elevation of the outside-cylinder tank engine made by Sharpe Brothers &amp; Co., of Manchester, for the Manchester and Birmingham Railway.</p> <p>Section of cylinder and other parts, and part elevation of ditto.</p> <p>Longitudinal section of ditto.</p> <p>Plan of ditto.</p> <p>Transverse sections of both ends, with sectional parts.</p> <p>Mr. Edward Woods' experiments on the several sections of old and modern</p> |
|--|---|

## TREDGOLD ON THE STEAM ENGINE.

- valves of locomotive engines,—viz. fig. 1. stroke commences; fig. 2, steam-port open; fig. 3, steam-port open; fig. 4, steam-port open; fig. 5, stroke completed, steam cut off, exhaustion commences; fig. 6, stroke commences; fig. 7, steam-port full open; fig. 8, steam cut off; fig. 9, exhaustion commences; fig. 10, steam completed.
- Ditto, drawn and engraved to half-size: fig. 1, old valve,  $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch lap; fig. 2,  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch lap; fig. 3,  $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch lap; fig. 4,  $\frac{7}{8}$ -inch lap, Gray's patent; fig. 5, 1-inch lap.
- Elevation of a six-wheeled locomotive engine and tender, No. 15, constructed by Messrs. Tayleur, Vulcan Foundry, Warrington, for the Caledonian Railway.
- Longitudinal section of ditto.
- Plan of ditto, engine and tender, with cylindrical part of boiler removed.
- Elevations of fire-box, section of fire-box, section of smoke-box, of ditto.
- Elevations and sectional parts of ditto.
- Sectional parts, half-plan of working gear, ditto.
- Elevation of Messrs. Robert Stephenson and Co.'s six-wheeled patent locomotive engine and tender.
- Longitudinal section of ditto.
- Plan and details of Stephenson's patent engine.
- Section of fire-box, section of smoke-box, front and back elevations of the same.
- Plan of a six-wheeled engine on the Birmingham and Shrewsbury Railway, constructed by Messrs. Bury, Curtis, and Kennedy, Liverpool.
- Longitudinal section of ditto.
- Sectional elevation of the smoke-box, & Sectional elevation of the fire-box of ditto.
- Elevation of the locomotive engine and tender, PLEWS, adapted for high speeds, constructed by Messrs. R. & W. Hawthorn, of Newcastle-upon-Tyne, for the York, Newcastle, and Berwick Railway Company.
- Longitudinal section of ditto. This section is through the fire-box, boiler, and smoke-box, showing the tubes, safety-valve, whistles, steam and blast pipes, &c.
- Plan of ditto.
- Plan of the working gear, details, &c.

*Forty-one plates and fifty-five wood engravings.*

## DIVISION B.—MARINE ENGINES, &amp;C.

- Two plates, comprising figures 1, 2, and 3, Properties of Steam.
- Plan of H. M. screw steam frigate DAUNTLESS, constructed by Robert Napier, Esq.
- Longitudinal elevation and transverse section of ditto.
- Longitudinal section at AB on plan, longitudinal section at CD on plan of ditto.
- Engines of H. M. steam ship TERRIBLE, constructed by Messrs. Maudslay, Sons, and Field, on the double-cylinder principle. Longitudinal sections of engines.
- Transverse section and end view of ditto.
- Transverse section through boilers of ditto.
- Plan of engines, showing also bunkers, paddles, &c.
- Oscillating engines of the Peninsular and Oriental Company's steam vessel ARIEL, constructed by John Penn and Sons. Longitudinal section.
- Section at engines of ditto.
- Section at boiler of ditto.
- Plan at boiler of ditto.
- Section at air-pump, and at cylinder.
- Annular cylinder engines of the iron steam vessels PRINCESS MARY and PRINCESS MAUDE, constructed by Maudslay, Sons, and Field. Longitudinal section.
- Transverse section at engines of ditto.
- Section at boilers of ditto.
- Plan of engines of ditto, showing bunkers, paddles, &c.
- Plan of engines of H. M. steam vessel SIMOOM, constructed by James Watt & Co., of London and Soho.



## TREDGOLD ON THE STEAM ENGINE.

- Longitudinal section of the SIMOOM.  
 Cross section of ditto.  
 Engine of the RED ROVER, side view and plan.  
 Longitudinal section of ditto.  
 Cross sections of ditto.  
 Sheer draught and plans of vessel.  
 Plan of the engine of H. M. steam frigate PHENIX.  
 Longitudinal section of engine of ditto.  
 Cross section of ditto.  
 Engine of the RUBY steam vessel, elevation and plan.  
 Sheer draught and plan of vessel.  
 Plan of engine of the WILBERFORCE, Hull and London packet.  
 Cross section of ditto and vessel.  
 Longitudinal section of engines of ditto.  
 Elevation of engines of ditto.  
 Engines of the BERENICE, Hon. E. I. Co.'s steam vessel.  
 Section of ditto.  
 Sheer draught and plan, stern view, and body plan of vessel.  
 View of the BERENICE, whilst at sea.  
 Boilers of H. M. ships HERMES, SPITFIRE, and FIREFLY.  
 Kingston's valves, as fitted on board sea-going vessels for blow-off injection, and hand-pump sea valves.  
 Boilers of H. M. steam vessel AFRICAN.  
 Morgan's paddle-wheels, as fitted in H. M. S. MEDEA.  
 Side elevation of ditto.  
 Plans of upper and lower decks of ditto.  
 Sheer draught and profile of ditto.  
 Morgan and Seaward's paddle-wheels, comparatively.  
 Positions of a float of a radiating paddle-wheel in a vessel in motion, and positions of a float of a vertically acting wheel in a vessel in motion.  
 Cycloidal paddle-wheels.  
 Sailing of steamers in five points from courses.  
 Experimental steaming and sailing of the CALEDONIA, VANGUARD, ASIA, and MEDEA.  
 Engines of H. M. steam ship MEGÆRA.  
 Engine of the steam boat NEW WORLD,
- T. F. Secor & Co., Engineers, New York. Elevation and section.  
 Elevations of cylinder and crank ends.  
 Steam cylinders, plans, and sections.  
 Details.  
 Several sections of details.  
 Details and sections.  
 Details of parts.  
 Plans and sections of condenser, bed-plates, air-pump bucket, &c.  
 Details and sections, injection valves.  
 Details, plan and elevation of beams, &c.  
 Details, sections of parts, boilers, &c. of the steam boat NEW WORLD.  
 Sections, details, and paddles.  
 Engines of the U. S. mail steamers OHIO and GEORGIA. Longitudinal section.  
 Elevations and cross sections of ditto.  
 Details of steam-chests, side-pipes, valves, and valve gear of ditto.  
 Section of valves, and plan of piston of ditto.  
 Boilers of ditto, sections of ditto.  
 Engine of the U. S. steamer WATER-WITCH. Sectional elevation.  
 Steam-chests and cylinders of ditto.  
 Boilers, sections, &c. of ditto.  
 Boilers of the U. S. steamer POWHATAN.  
 Front view and sections of ditto.  
 Elevation of the Pittsburg and Cincinnati American packet BUCKEYE STATE.  
 Bow view, stern view.  
 Plan of the BUCKEYE STATE.  
 Model, &c. of ditto, wheel-house frame, cross section at wheel-house, and body plan.  
 Plan and side elevation of ditto.  
 Sheer draught and plan, with the body plan, of the U. S. steam frigate SARANAC.  
 Longitudinal section of ditto, cross section.  
 Engines of the U. S. steamer SUSQUEHANNA.  
 Elevation of the U. S. PACIFIC steam packet engine.  
 Plan of ditto.  
 Boilers of ditto, end views.  
 Ditto ditto.

*Eighty-five engravings and fifty-one wood-cuts.*



## TREDGOLD ON THE STEAM ENGINE.

## DIVISION C. TO G., FORMING VOL. III.

## STATIONARY ENGINES, PUMPING ENGINES, MARINE BOILERS, &amp;C.

- Side elevation of pumping engine, U. S. dock, New York.
- End elevation of ditto.
- Elevation and section of the pumps, ditto.—2 plates.
- Boilers of pumping engines, ditto.
- Boilers, Details, &c. of pumping engines, ditto.
- Plan of the boilers, ditto.
- Isometrical projection of a rectangular boiler.
- Plan and two sections of a cylindrical boiler.
- Brunton's apparatus for feeding furnace-fires by means of machinery.
- Parts of a high-pressure engine with a 4-passaged cock.
- Section of a double-acting condensing engine.
- Section of a common atmospheric engine.
- On the construction of pistons.
- Section of steam pipes and valves.
- Apparatus for opening and closing steam passages.
- Parallel motions.—2 plates.
- Plan and elevation of an atmospheric engine.
- Elevation of a single-acting Boulton and Watt engine.
- Double-acting engine for raising water.
- Double-acting engine for impelling machinery.
- Maudslay's portable condensing engine for impelling machinery.
- Indicator for measuring the force of steam in the cylinder, and diagrams of forms of vessels.
- Section of a steam vessel with its boiler, in two parts—diagrams showing fire-places—longitudinal section through boiler and fire-places.
- Isometrical projection of a steam-boat engine.
- Plan and section of a steam-boat engine.
- Ten horse-power engine, constructed by W. Fairbairn and Co.—4 plates.
- Forty-five horse-power engine, constructed by W. Fairbairn & Co.—3 plates.
- Plan and section of boiler for a 20-horse engine, at the manufactory of Whitworth & Co., Manchester.
- Messrs. Hague's double-acting cylinder, with slides, &c.
- Sixty-five-inch cylinder, erected by Maudslay, Sons, and Field, at the Chelsea Water-works.—5 plates.
- Beale's patented rotary engine.
- Double-story boilers of H.M.S. DEVASTATION, 400 H. P.
- Refrigerator feed and brine pumps.
- Feed and brine apparatus, as fitted on board the West India Royal Mail Company's ships.
- Boilers of H. M. steam sloop BASILISK, 400 H. P.
- Boilers of the SINGAPORE, 470 H. P., Peninsular and Oriental Company.
- Original double-story boilers of the GREAT WESTERN.
- Telescopic chimney, or sliding funnel, of H. M. ship HYDRA, 220 H. P.
- Seaward's patent brine and feed valves.
- Boilers of H. M. mail packet UNDINE, (Miller, Ravenhill, & Co.) 100 H. P.
- Cross sections of engines of H. M. mail packet UNDINE.
- Longitudinal elevation of ditto.
- Brine-pumps as fitted on board H.M.S. MEDEA, 220 H. P. (Maudslay, Sons, and Field.)
- Boilers of H. M. S. HYDRA, 220 H. P.
- Plan of the four boilers, with the supplementary steam-chests and shut-off valves, of the AVENGER.
- Boilers of H. M. steam ship NIGER, 400 H. P., fitted by Maudslay, Sons, and Field.
- Experimental boiler, Woolwich Yard.
- Boilers of H. M. S. TERRIBLE, 800 H. P. (Maudslay, Sons, and Field.)
- Boilers of the MINX and TEASER, 100 H. P. (transferred to WASP.)
- Boilers of the SAMSON, 450 H. P.
- Daniel's pyrometer, full size.
- Boilers of the DESPERATE, 400 H. P. (Maudslay, Sons, and Field.)
- Boilers of the NIGER (2nd plate).
- Boilers of H. M. S. BASILISK (2nd plate).
- Boilers of the UNDINE.

## TREDGOLD ON THE STEAM ENGINE.

Boilers of the Royal Mail steam ships ASIA and AFRICA, 768 H. P., constructed by R. Napier, Glasgow.	Large self-acting surfacing and screw-propeller lathe, by Joseph Whitworth & Co., Manchester.
Longitudinal and midship sections of ditto.	Longitudinal section, showing arrangement of engine-room for disc engine applied to a screw propeller, and Bishop's disc engine, by G. & J. Rennie, with details.
Boilers of H. M. S. LA HOGUE, 450 H. P. (Seaward & Co.)	Arrangement of engine-room for engines of 60 horse-power, for driving propellers of H. M. steam vessels REYNARD and CRUISER, constructed by Messrs. Rennie. Longitudinal section and engine-room.
H. M. S. SIDON, 560 H. P. Plan of telescope funnel.	Ditto. Transverse section at boilers and at engines.
Boilers of H. M. S. BRISK, 250 H. P.	Very elaborate diagrams showing experiments and results of various paddle-wheels.—8 plates.
Copper boilers for H. M. S. SANS-PAREIL, 350 H. P. (James Watt & Co.)	Steam flour-mills at Smyrna, constructed by Messrs. Joyce & Co. Double cylinder pendulous condensing engine, side elevation.
American marine boilers, designed and executed by C. W. Copeland, Esq., of New York, as fitted on board the American packets.	Side elevation, horizontal plan, ditto. Longitudinal section.
Midship section of the hull of the steam packet PACIFIC, New York and Liverpool line.	Horizontal plan of mill-house and boilers.
Elevation of pumping engines of the New Orleans Water-works, U. S., arranged and drawn by E. W. Smith, Engineer, constructed at the Allaire Works, New York.	Transverse section through engine-house and mill.
Elevation of pumps and valves, chests, gearing, &c.	Boilers, longitudinal and transverse sections, front view.
Elevation at steam cylinder end.	Section through mill-stones, elevation of upper part, section of lower part, plan of hopper, &c.
General plan of a turbine water-wheel in operation at Lowell, Massachusetts, U. S., by J. B. Francis, C. E.	
Elevation of ditto.—Section of ditto.	
Plan of the floats and guide curves, ditto.	

## SUMMARY OF THE ILLUSTRATIONS.

	Plates.	Wood-cuts.
Vol. I. Locomotive Engines . . . . .	41	55
II. Marine Engines . . . . .	85	51
III. Stationary Engines, Pumping Engines, Engines for Flour-Mills, Examples of Boilers, &c., &c. .	100	58
Total . . . . .	226	164

FULL-LENGTH PORTRAIT OF  
HENRY CAVENDISH, F.R.S.

Some few India paper proofs, before the letters, of this celebrated Philosopher and Chemist, to be had, price 2s. 6d.

# HINTS TO YOUNG ARCHITECTS:

COMPRISING

ADVICE TO THOSE WHO, WHILE YET AT SCHOOL ARE DESTINED  
TO THE PROFESSION;  
TO SUCH AS, HAVING PASSED THEIR PUPILAGE, ARE ABOUT TO TRAVEL  
AND TO THOSE WHO, HAVING COMPLETED THEIR EDUCATION,  
ARE ABOUT TO PRACTISE:

TOGETHER WITH

## A MODEL SPECIFICATION:

INVOLVING A GREAT VARIETY OF INSTRUCTIVE AND SUGGESTIVE MATTER,  
CALCULATED TO FACILITATE THEIR PRACTICAL OPERATIONS;  
AND TO DIRECT THEM IN THEIR CONDUCT, AS THE RESPONSIBLE  
AGENTS OF THEIR EMPLOYERS,  
AND AS THE RIGHTFUL JUDGES OF A CONTRACTOR'S DUTY.

BY GEORGE WIGHTWICK, ARCHITECT.

### CONTENTS:—

Preliminary Hints to Young Architects on the Knowledge of Drawing.  
On Serving his Time.  
On Travelling.  
His Plate on the Door.  
Orders, Plan-drawing.  
On his Taste, Study of Interiors.  
Interior Arrangements.  
Warming and Ventilating.  
House Building, Stabling.  
Cottages and Villas.  
Model Specification:—  
General Clauses.  
Foundations.  
Well.  
Artificial Foundations.  
Brickwork.  
Rubble Masonry with Brick Mingled.

### Model Specification:

Stone-cutting.  
—, Grecian or Italian only.  
—, Gothic only.  
Miscellaneous.  
Slating.  
Tiling.  
Plaster and Cement-work.  
Carpenters' Work.  
Joiners' Work.  
Iron and Metal-work.  
Plumbers' Work.  
Drainage.  
Well-digging.  
Artificial Levels, Concrete, Foundations, Piling and Planking, Paving, Vaulting, Bell-hanging, Plumbing, and Building generally.

Extra cloth boards, price 8s.

## ASTRONOMICAL ANNUAL FOR 1854.

COMPRISING

- I. The Ephemerides.
- II. On the Cometic Mysteries, by Professor A. Crestadora, with Plates.
- III. Notice of the Biography of J. S. Bailly.

Price 1s.

---

### THE WORK ON BRIDGES OF STONE, IRON, TIMBER, AND WIRE.

In 4 Vols., bound in 3, described in the larger Catalogue of Publications ; to which the following is the Supplement, now completed, entitled

#### SUPPLEMENT TO "THE THEORY, PRACTICE, AND ARCHITECTURE OF BRIDGES OF STONE, IRON, TIMBER, WIRE, AND SUSPENSION,"

In one large 8vo volume, with explanatory Text and 68 Plates, comprising details and measured dimensions, in Parts as follows :—

Part I.	. . . . .	6s.
„ II.	. . . . .	6s.
„ III.	. . . . .	6s.
„ IV.	. . . . .	10s.
„ V. & VI.	. . . . .	20s.

Bound in half-morocco, uniform with the larger work, price 2l. 10s., or in a different pattern at the same price.

#### LIST OF PLATES.

Cast-iron girder bridge, Ashford, Rye and Hastings Railway.	Mr. Fairbairn's hollow-girder bridge at Blackburn.
Details, ditto.	Waterford and Limerick Railway truss bridge.
Elevation and plan of truss of St. Mary's Viaduct, Cheltenham Railway.	Hollow-girder bridge over the River Medlock.
Iron road bridge over the Railway at Chalk Farm.	Railway bridge over lagoons of Venice.



## BRIDGES OF STONE, &amp;c.

- Viaduct at Beangency, Orleans and Tours Railway.
- Oblique cast-iron bridge, on the system of M. Polonceau, over the Canal St. Denis.
- Blackwall Extension Railway, Commercial Road bridge.
- Ditto, enlarged elevation of outside girders, with details.
- Ditto, details.
- Ditto, ditto, and sections.
- Ditto, ditto, ditto.
- Richmond and Windsor main line, bridge over the Thames.
- Ditto, details.
- Ditto, ditto, and sections.
- Orleans and Bordeaux Railway bridge.
- Ditto, sections and details.
- Rouen and Havre Railway timber bridge.
- Ditto, details.
- Ditto, ditto, and sections.
- Viaduct of the Valley of Malauncey, near Rouen.
- Hoop-iron suspension bridge over the Seine at Suresne, department de la Seine.
- Hoop-iron suspension foot bridge at Abainville.
- Suspension bridge over the Douro, iron wire suspension cables.
- Ditto, details.
- Glasgow and South-Western Railway bridge over the water of Ayr.
- Ditto, sections and details.
- Plan of the cities of Ofen and Pesth.
- Sections and soundings of the River Danube.
- Longitudinal section of framing.
- No. 1 coffer-dam.
- Transverse framing of coffer-dam.
- Sections of Nos. 2 and 3 of coffer-dam.
- Plan of No. 3 coffer-dam and ice-breakers.
- Plan and elevation of the construction of the scaffolding, and the manner of hoisting the chains.
- Line of soundings,— dam longitudinal sections.
- Dam sections.
- Plan and elevation of the Pesth suspension bridge.
- Elevation of Nos. 2 and 3 coffer-dams.
- End view of ditto.
- Transverse section of No. 2 ditto.
- Transverse section of coffer-dam, plan of the 1st course, and No. 3 pier.
- Vertical section of Nos. 2 and 3 piers, showing vertical bond-stones.
- Vertical cross section of ditto.
- Front elevation of Nos. 2 and 3 piers.
- End elevation of ditto.
- Details of chains.—Ditto.
- Ditto and plan of nut, bolt, and retaining-links.
- Plan and elevation of roller-frames.
- Elevation and section of main blocks for raising the chains.
- Ditto, longitudinal section of fixture pier, showing tunnel for chains.
- Plan and elevation of retaining-plates, showing machine for boring holes for retaining-bars.
- Retaining link and bar.
- Longitudinal plan and elevation of cast-iron beam with truss columns.
- Longitudinal elevation and section of trussing, &c.
- Plan of pier at level of footpath.
- Detail of cantilevers for supporting the balconies round the towers.
- Elevation and section of cantilevers.
- Detail of key-stone & Hungarian arms.
- Front elevation of toll-houses and wing walls.
- Longitudinal elevation of toll-house, fixture pier, wing wall, and pedestal.
- Vertical section of retaining-piers.
- Section at end of fixture pier, showing chain-holes.
- Lamp and pedestal at entrance of bridge.
- Lamp and pedestal at end of wing walls.

Separately sold from the above in a volume, price half-bound in morocco £1. 12s.

An ACCOUNT, with Illustrations, of the SUSPENSION BRIDGE ACROSS the RIVER DANUBE,

BY WILLIAM TIERNEY CLARK, C. E., F. R. S.

*With Forty Engravings.*

# THE ENGINEER'S AND CONTRACTOR'S POCKET BOOK,

WITH AN ASTRONOMICAL ALMANACK,

REVISED FOR 1854. In morocco tuck, price 6s.

## CONTENTS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>Air, Air in motion (or wind), and wind-mills.<br/>Alloys for bronze; Miscellaneous alloys and compositions; Table of alloys; Alloys of copper and zinc, and of copper and tin.<br/>Almanack for 1852 and 1853.<br/>American railroads; steam vessels.<br/>Areas of the segments of a circle.<br/>Armstrong (R.), his experiment on boilers.<br/>Astronomical phenomena.<br/>Ballasting.<br/>Barlow's (Mr.) experiments.<br/>Barrel drains and culverts.<br/>Bell-hanger's prices.<br/>Blowing a blast engine.<br/>Boilers and engines, proportions of; Furnaces and chimneys; Marine.<br/>Bossut's experiments on the discharge of water by horizontal conduit or conducting pipes.<br/>Brass, weight of a lineal foot of, round and square.<br/>Breen (Hugh), his almanack.<br/>Bricks.<br/>Bridges and viaducts; Bridges of brick and stone; Iron bridges; Timber bridges.<br/>Burt's (Mr.) agency for the sale of preserved timber.<br/>Cask and malt gauging.<br/>Cast-iron binders or joints; Columns, formulæ of; Columns or cylinders, Table of diameter of; Hollow columns, Table of the diameters and thickness of metal of; Girders, prices of; Stancheons, Table of, strength of.<br/>Chairs, tables, weights, &amp;c.<br/>Chatburn limestone.<br/>Chimneys, &amp;c., dimensions of.<br/>Circumferences, &amp;c. of circles.<br/>Coal, evaporating power of, and results of coking.<br/>Columns, cast-iron, weight or pressure of, strength of.</p> | <p>Comparative values between the present and former measures of capacity.<br/>Continuous bearing.<br/>Copper pipes, Table of the weight of, Table of the bore and weight of cocks for.<br/>Copper, weight of a lineal foot of, round and square.<br/>Cornish pumping engines.<br/>Cotton mill; Cotton press.<br/>Current coin of the principal commercial countries, with their weight and relative value in British money.<br/>Digging, well-sinking, &amp;c.<br/>Docks, dry, at Greenock.<br/>Draining by steam power.<br/>Dredging machinery.<br/>DWARF, Table of experiments with H. M. screw steam tender.<br/>Earthwork and embankments, Tables of contents, &amp;c.<br/>Experiments on rectangular bars of malleable iron, by Mr. Barlow; on angle and T iron bars.<br/>Fairbairn (Wm.), on the expansive action of steam, and a new construction of expansion valves for condensing steam engines.<br/>Feet reduced to links and decimals.<br/>Fire-proof flooring.<br/>Flour-mills.<br/>Fluids in motion.<br/>Francis (J. B., of Lowell, Massachusetts), his water-wheel.<br/>French measures.<br/>Friction.<br/>Fuel, boilers, furnaces, &amp;c.<br/>Furnaces and boilers.<br/>Galvanized tin iron sheets in London or Liverpool, list of gauges and weights of.<br/>Gas-tubing composition.<br/>Glynn (Joseph), F. R. S., on turbine water-wheels.<br/>Hawksby (Mr., of Nottingham), his experiments on pumping water.<br/>Heat, Tables of the effects of.</p> |
|---|--|

## THE ENGINEER'S AND CONTRACTOR'S POCKET BOOK.

- Hexagon heads and nuts for bolts, proportional sizes and weights of.  
 Hick's rule for calculating the strength of shafts.  
 Hodgkinson's (Eaton) experiments.  
 Hungerford Bridge.  
 Hydraulics.  
 Hydrodynamics.  
 Hydrostatic press.  
 Hydrostatics.  
 Imperial standard measures of Great Britain; Iron.  
 Indian Navy, ships of war, and other vessels.  
 Institution of Civil Engineers, List of Members of the, corrected to March 15, 1852.  
 Iron balls, weight of cast; bars, angle and T, weight of; castings; experiments; hoop, weight of 10 lineal feet; lock gates; roofs; tubes for locomotive and marine boilers; weights of rolled iron.  
 Ironmonger's prices.  
 Just's analysis of Mr. Dixon Robinson's limestone.  
 Latitudes and longitudes of the principal observatories.  
 Lead pipes, Table of the weights of.  
 Leslie (J.), C.E.  
 Lime, mortar, cements, concrete, &c.  
 Limestone, analysis of.  
 Liquids in motion.  
 Locomotive engines; Table showing the speed of an engine.  
 Log for a sea-going steamer, form of.  
 Machines and tools, prices of.  
 Mahogany, experiments made on the strength of Honduras. [wheels.  
 Mallet's experiments on overshot  
 Marine boilers; engines.  
 Masonry and stone-work.  
 Massachusetts railroads.  
 Mensuration, epitome of.  
 Metals, lineal expansion of.  
 Morin's (Col.) experiments.  
 Motion; motion of water in rivers.  
 Nails, weight and length.  
 Navies — of the United States; Indian Navy; Oriental and Peninsular Company; British Navy; of Austria; Denmark; Naples; Spain; France; Germanic Confederation; Holland; Portugal; Prussia; Sardinia; Sweden and Norway; Turkey; Russia  
 Royal West India Mail Company's fleet.  
 New York, State of, railroads.  
 Numbers, Table of the fourth and fifth power of.  
 Paddle-wheel steamers.  
 Pambour (Count de) and Mr. Parkes' experiments on boilers for the production of steam.  
 Peacocke's (R. A.) hydraulic experiments.  
 Pile-driving.  
 Pitch of wheels. Table to find the diameter of a wheel for a given pitch of teeth.  
 Plastering.  
 Playfair (Dr. Lyon).  
 Preserved timber.  
 Prices for railways, paid by H. M. Office of Works; smith and founder's work.  
 Prony's experiments.  
 Proportions of steam engines and boilers.  
 Pumping engines; pumping water by steam power.  
 Rails, chairs, &c., Table of.  
 Railway, American, statistics; railway and building contractor's prices; carriages.  
 Rain, Tables of.  
 Rammell's (T. W.) plan and estimate for a distributing apparatus by fixed pipes and hydrants.  
 Rennie's (Mr. Geo.) experiments; (the late J.) estimate.  
 Roads, experiments upon carriages travelling on ordinary roads; influence of the diameter of the wheels; Morin's experiments on the traction of carriages, and the destructive effects which they produce upon roads.  
 Robinson (Dixon), his experiments and material.  
 Roofs; covering of roofs.  
 Ropes, Morin's recent experiments on the stiffness of ropes; tarred ropes; dry white ropes.  
 Saw-mill.  
 Screw steamers.  
 Sewage manures.  
 Sewers, castings for their estimates, &c.



## THE ENGINEER'S AND CONTRACTOR'S POCKET BOOK.

Signs and abbreviations used in arithmetic and mathematical expressions.

Slating.

Sleepers, quantity in cubic feet, &c.

Smeaton's experiments on wind-mills.

Smith and founder's prices.

Specific gravity, Table of.

Steam dredging; Navigation; Tables of the elastic force; Table of Vessels of war, of America; of England; of India; and of several other maritime nations.

Steel, weight of round steel.

Stone, per lb., stone, qr., cwt., and ton, &c., Table of the price.

Stones.

Strength of columns; Materials of construction.

Sugar-mill.

Suspension aqueduct over the Alleghany River; Bridges over ditto.

Table of experiments with H. M. screw steam tender DWARF; of gradients; iron roofs; latent heats; paddle-wheel steamers of H. M. Service and Post-Office Service; pressure of the wind moving at given velocities; prices of galvanized tinned iron tube; specific heats; the cohesive power of bodies; columns, posts, &c., of timber and iron; the comparative strength, size, weight, and price of iron-wire rope (A. Smith's), hempen rope, and iron chain; corresponding velocities with heads of water as high as 50 ft., in feet and decimals; dimensions of the principal parts of marine engines; effects of heat on different metals; elastic force of steam; expansion and density of water; expansion of solids by increasing the temperature; expansion of water by heat; heights corresponding to different velocities, in French metres; lineal expansion of metals; motion of water, and quantities discharged by pipes of different diameters; power of metals, &c.; pressure, &c., of wind-mill sails; principal dimensions of 28 merchant steamers with screw propellers; of steamers with paddle-wheels; progressive, dilatation of metals by heat, &c.; proportion of real to theoretica

discharge through thin-lipped orifices; quantities of water, in cubic feet, discharged over a weir per minute, hour, &c.; relative weight and strength of ropes and chains; results of experiments on the friction of unctuous surfaces; scantlings of posts of oak; size and weight of iron laths; weight in lbs. required to crush  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch cubes of stone, and other bodies; weight of a lineal foot of cast-iron pipes, in lbs.; weight of a lineal foot of flat bar iron, in lbs.; weight of a lineal foot of square and round bar iron; weight of a superficial foot of various metals, in lbs.; weight of modules of elasticity of various metals; velocities of paddle-wheels of different diameters, in feet per minute, and British statute miles, per hour; the dimensions, cost, and price per cubic yard, of ten of the principal bridges or viaducts built for railways; the height of the boiling point at different heights;—to find the diameter of a wheel for a given pitch of teeth, &c.

Tables of squares, cubes, square and cube roots.

Teeth of wheels.

Temperature, the relative indications of, by different thermometers.

Thermometers, Table of comparison of different.

Timber for carpentry and joinery purposes; Table of the properties of different kinds of.

Tin plates, Table of the weight of.

Tools and machines, prices of.

Traction, Morin's experiments on.

Tredgold's Rules for Hydraulics, from Eytelwein's Equation.

Turbines, Report on, by Joseph Glynn and others.

Values of different materials.

Water-wheels.

Watson's (H. H.) analysis of limestone from the quarries at Chatburn.

Weight of angle and T iron bars; of woods.

Weights and measures.

West India Royal Mail Company.

Whitelaw's experiments on turbine water-wheels.



THE ENGINEER'S AND CONTRACTOR'S POCKET BOOK.

White's (Mr., of Cowes) experiments on Honduras mahogany.  
Wicksteed's (Thos.) experiments on the evaporating power of different kinds of coal.

Wind-mills; of air, air in motion, &c.  
Woods.  
Wrought iron, prices of.  
Zinc as a material for use in house-building.

In one Volume 8vo, extra cloth, bound, price 9s.

THE STUDENT'S GUIDE TO THE PRACTICE OF DESIGNING, MEASURING, AND VALUING ARTIFICERS' WORKS;

Containing Directions for taking Dimensions, abstracting the same, and bringing the Quantities into Bill; with Tables of Constants, and copious memoranda for the Valuation of Labour and Materials in the respective trades of Bricklayer and Slater, Carpenter and Joiner, Sawyer, Stonemason, Plasterer, Smith and Ironmonger, Plumber, Painter and Glazier, Paper-hanger. Thirty-eight plates and wood-cuts.

The Measuring, &c., edited by EDWARD DOBSON, Architect and Surveyor. Second Edition, with the additions on Design by E. LACY GARBETT, Architect.

CONTENTS.

PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS ON DESIGNING ARTIFICERS' WORKS.

Preliminary Observations on Measurement, Valuation, &c.—On measuring—On rotation therein—On abstracting quantities—On valuation—On the use of constants of labour.

BRICKLAYER AND SLATER.

DESIGN OF BRICKWORK—technical terms, &c.

Foundations—Arches, inverted and erect—Window and other aperture heads—Window jambs—Plates and internal cornices—String-courses—External cornices—Chimney shafts—On general improvement of brick architecture, especially fenestration.

MEASUREMENT.

Of diggers' work—Of brickwork, of facings, &c.

DESIGN OF TILING, and technical terms.

Measurement of Tiling—Example of the mode of keeping the measuring-book for brickwork.

ABSTRACTING Bricklayers' and Tilers' work.

Example of bill of Bricklayers' and Tilers' work.

VALUATION of Bricklayers' work, Earthwork, Concrete, &c.

Table of sizes and weights of various articles—Tables of the numbers of bricks or tiles in various works—Valuation of Diggers' and Bricklayers' labour—Table of Constants for said labour.

EXAMPLES OF VALUING.

1. A yard of concrete.—2. A rod of brickwork.—3. A foot of facing.—4. A yard of paving.—5. A square of tiling.

DESIGN, MEASUREMENT, AND VALUATION OF SLATING.

CARPENTER AND JOINER.

DESIGN OF CARPENTRY—technical terms, &c.

Brestsummers, an abuse: substitutes for them—Joists, trimmers, trimming-joists—Girders, their abuse

## DESIGNING, MEASURING, AND VALUING ARTIFICERS' WORKS.

and right use—Substitutes for girders and quarter-partitions—Quarter-partitions—Roof-framing—Great waste in present common modes of roof-framing—To determine the right mode of subdividing the weight, and the right numbers of bearers for leaded roofs—The same for other roofs—Principle of the truss—Considerations that determine its right pitch—Internal filling or *tracery* of trusses—Collar-beam trusses—Connection of the parts of trusses—Variations on the truss; right limits thereto—To avoid fallacious trussing and roof-framing—Delorme's roofing; its economy on circular plans—Useful property of regular polygonal plans—On combinations of roofing, hips, and valleys—On gutters, their use and abuse—Mansarde or curb-roofs.

DESIGN OF JOINERY—technical terms, &c.

Modes of finishing and decorating panel-work—Design of doors.

MEASUREMENT of Carpenters' and Joiners' work—Abbreviations.

Modes of measuring Carpenters' work—Classification of labour when measured with the timber—Classification of labour and nails when measured separately from the timber.

EXAMPLES OF MEASUREMENT, arch centerings.

Bracketing to sham entablatures, gutters, sound-boarding, chimney-grounds, sham plinths, sham pilasters, floor-boarding, mouldings—Doorcases, doors, doorway linings—Dado or surbase, its best construction—Sashes and sash-frames (examples of measurement)—Shutters, boxings, and other window fittings—Staircases and their fittings.

ABSTRACTING Carpenters' and Joiners' work.

Example of Bill of Carpenters' and Joiners' work.

VALUATION of Carpenters' and Joiners' work, Memoranda.

Tables of numbers and weights.

TABLES OF CONSTANTS OF LABOUR.

Roofs, naked floors—Quarter-par-

titions—Labour on fir, per foot cube—Example of the valuation of deals or battens—Constants of labour on deals, per foot superficial.

CONSTANTS OF LABOUR, and of nails, separately.

On battening, weather boarding—Rough boarding, deal floors, batten floors.

LABOUR AND NAILS together.

On grounds, skirtings, gutters, doorway-linings—Doors, framed partitions, mouldings—Window-fittings—Shutters, sashes and frames, staircases—Staircase fittings, wall-strings—Dados, sham columns and pilasters.

VALUATION OF SAWYERS' WORK.

## MASON.

DESIGN OF STONEMASONS' WORK.

Dr. Robison on Greek and Gothic Architecture—Great fallacy in the Gothic ornamentation, which led also to the modern 'monkey styles'—'Restoration' and Preservation.

MEASUREMENT of Stonemason's work.

Example of measuring a spandril step, three methods—Allowance for labour not seen in finished stone—Abbreviations—Specimen of the measuring-book—Stairs—Landings—Steps—Coping—String-courses—Plinths, window-sills, curbs—Columns, entablatures, blockings—Cornices, renaissance niches.

ABSTRACTING AND VALUATION.

Table of weight of stone—Table of Constants of Labour—Example of Bill of Masons' work.

## PLASTERER.

DESIGN OF PLASTER-WORK in real and mock Architecture.

Ceilings and their uses—Unnecessary disease and death traced to their misconstruction—Sanitary requirements for a right ceiling—Conditions to be observed to render domestic ceilings innocuous—Ditto, for ceilings of public buildings—Barbarous shifts necessitated by wrong ceiling—Technical terms in Plasterers' work.

MEASUREMENT of Plaster-work.

DESIGNING, MEASURING, AND VALUING ARTIFICERS' WORKS.

Abbreviations. — Abstracting of Plasterers' work — Example of Bill of Plasterers' work.

VALUATION.

Memoranda of quantities of materials — Constants of Labour.

SMITH AND FOUNDER.

ON THE USE OF METAL-WORK IN ARCHITECTURE.

Iron not rightly to be used much more now than in the middle ages — Substitutes for the present extravagant use of iron — Fire-proof (and sanitary) ceiling and flooring — Fire-proof roof-framing in brick and iron — Another method, applicable to hipped roofs — A mode of untrussed roof-framing in iron only — A principle for iron trussed roofing on any plan or scale — Another variation thereof — On the decoration of metallic architecture.

MEASUREMENT of Smiths' and Founders' work.

PLUMBER, PAINTER, GLAZIER, &c.

DESIGN, &c. OF LEAD-WORK.

MEASUREMENT OF PAINT-WORK — Abbreviations.

Specimen of the measuring-book — Abstract of Paint-work — Example of Bill of Paint-work.

VALUATION of Paint-work.

Constants of Labour — Measurement and Valuation of GLAZING — Measurement and Valuation of PAPER-HANGING.

APPENDIX ON WARMING.

Modifications of sanitary construction to suit the English open fire — More economic modes of warming in public buildings — Ditto, for private ones — Warming by gas.

In 12mo., price 5s. bound and lettered,

THE OPERATIVE MECHANIC'S WORKSHOP COMPANION, AND THE SCIENTIFIC GENTLEMAN'S PRACTICAL ASSISTANT;

Comprising a great variety of the most useful Rules in Mechanical Science, divested of mathematical complexity; with numerous Tables of Practical Data and Calculated Results, for facilitating Mechanical and Commercial Transactions.

BY W. TEMPLETON,

AUTHOR OF SEVERAL SCIENTIFIC WORKS.

Third edition, with the addition of Mechanical Tables for the use of Operative Smiths, Millwrights, and Engineers; and practical directions for the Smelting of Metallic Ores.

2 vols. 4to, price £ 2. 16s.,

CARPENTRY AND JOINERY;

Containing 190 Plates; a work suitable to Carpenters and Builders, comprising Elementary and Practical Carpentry, useful to Artificers in the Colonies.

## THE AIDE-MÉMOIRE TO THE MILITARY SCIENCES,

Framed from Contributions of Officers of the different Services, and edited by a Committee of the Corps of Royal Engineers. The work is now completed.

Sold in 3 vols. £ 4. 10s., extra cloth boards and lettered, or in 6 Parts, as follows :

	£.	s.	d.
Part I. A. to D., NEW EDITION . . . . .	0	14	0
II. D. to F. . . . .	0	16	0
III. F. to M. . . . .	0	16	0
IV. M. to P. . . . .	0	14	0
V. P. to R. . . . .	0	16	0
VI. R. to Z. . . . .	1	0	0
	£ 4 16 0		

In 1 large Volume, with numerous Tables, Engravings, and Cuts,

### A TEXT BOOK

For Agents, Estate Agents, Stewards, and Private Gentlemen, generally, in connection with Valuing, Surveying, Building, Letting and Leasing, Setting out, disposing, and particularly describing all kinds of Property, whether it be Land or Personal Property. Useful to

Auctioneers	Assurance Companies	Landed Proprietors
Appraisers	Builders	Stewards
Agriculturists	Civil Engineers	Surveyors
Architects	Estate Agents	Valuers, &c.

In 1 vol. large 8vo, with 13 Plates, price One Guinea, in half-morocco binding,

### MATHEMATICS FOR PRACTICAL MEN :

Being a Common-Place Book of PURE AND MIXED MATHEMATICS; together with the Elementary Principles of Engineering; designed chiefly for the use of Civil Engineers, Architects, and Surveyors.

BY OLINTHUS GREGORY, LL.D., F.R.A.S.

Third Edition, revised and enlarged by HENRY LAW, Civil Engineer.

#### CONTENTS.

#### PART I.—PURE MATHEMATICS.

##### CHAPTER I.—ARITHMETIC.

SECT.

1. Definitions and notation.
2. Addition of whole numbers.
3. Subtraction of whole numbers.
4. Multiplication of whole numbers.

SECT.

5. Division of whole numbers. —  
Proof of the first four rules of  
Arithmetic.
6. Vulgar fractions. — Reduction of  
vulgar fractions.—Addition and



## MATHEMATICS FOR PRACTICAL MEN.

SECT.

- subtraction of vulgar fractions. — Multiplication and division of vulgar fractions.
7. Decimal fractions.—Reduction of decimals.—Addition and subtraction of decimals.—Multiplication and division of decimals.
  8. Complex fractions used in the arts and commerce.—Reduction.—Addition.—Subtraction and multiplication.—Division.—Duodecimals.
  9. Powers and roots.—Evolution.
  10. Proportion.—Rule of Three.—Determination of ratios.
  11. Logarithmic arithmetic.—Use of the Tables.—Multiplication and division by logarithms.—Proportion, or the Rule of Three, by logarithms.—Evolution and involution by logarithms.
  12. Properties of numbers.

## CHAPTER II.—ALGEBRA.

1. Definitions and notation.—2. Addition and subtraction.—3. Multiplication.—4. Division.—5. Involution.—6. Evolution.—7. Surds.—Reduction.—Addition, subtraction, and multiplication.—Division, involution, and evolution.—8. Simple equations.—Extermination.—Solution of general problems.—9. Quadratic equations.—10. Equations in general.—11. Progression.—Arithmetical progression.—Geometrical progression.—12. Fractional and negative exponents.—13. Logarithms.—14. Computation of formulæ.

## CHAPTER III.—GEOMETRY.

1. Definitions.—2. Of angles, and right lines, and their rectangles.

## PART II.—MIXED MATHEMATICS.

## CHAPTER I.—MECHANICS IN GENERAL.

## CHAPTER II.—STATICS.

1. Statical equilibrium.
2. Centre of gravity.
3. General application of the principles of statics to the equilibrium

SECT.

—3. Of triangles.—4. Of quadrilaterals and polygons.—5. Of the circle, and inscribed and circumscribed figures.—6. Of plans and solids.—7. Practical geometry.

## CHAPTER IV.—MENSURATION.

1. Weights and measures.—1. Measures of length.—2. Measures of surface.—3. Measures of solidity and capacity.—4. Measures of weight.—5. Angular measure.—6. Measure of time.—Comparison of English and French weights and measures.
2. Mensuration of superficies.
3. Mensuration of solids.

## CHAPTER V.—TRIGONOMETRY.

1. Definitions and trigonometrical formulæ.—2. Trigonometrical Tables.—3. General propositions.—4. Solution of the cases of plane triangles.—Right-angled plane triangles.—5. On the application of trigonometry to measuring heights and distances.—Determination of heights and distances by approximate mechanical methods.

## CHAPTER VI.—CONIC SECTIONS.

1. Definitions.—2. Properties of the ellipse.—3. Properties of the hyperbola.—4. Properties of the parabola.

## CHAPTER VII.—PROPERTIES OF CURVES.

1. Definitions.—2. The conchoid.—3. The cissoid.—4. The cycloid and epicycloid.—5. The quadratrix.—6. The catenary.—Relations of Catenarian Curves.

of structures.—Equilibrium of piers or abutments.—Pressure of earth against walls.—Thickness of walls.—Equilibrium of polygons.—Stability of arches.—Equilibrium of suspension bridges.

## MATHEMATICS FOR PRACTICAL MEN.

## SECT.

## CHAPTER III.—DYNAMICS.

1. General Definitions.
2. On the general laws of uniform and variable motion.—Motion uniformly accelerated.—Motion of bodies under the action of gravity.—Motion over a fixed pulley, and on inclined planes.
3. Motions about a fixed centre, or axis.—Centres of oscillation and percussion.—Simple and compound pendulums.—Centre of gyration, and the principles of rotation.—Central forces.
4. Percussion or collision of bodies in motion.
5. Mechanical powers.—Levers.—Wheel & axle.—Pulley.—Inclined plane.—Wedge and screw.

## CHAPTER IV.—HYDROSTATICS.

1. General Definitions.—2. Pressure and equilibrium of Non-elastic Fluids.—3. Floating Bodies.—4. Specific gravities.—5. On capillary attraction.

## CHAPTER V.—HYDRODYNAMICS.

1. Motion and effluence of liquids.
2. Motion of water in conduit pipes and open canals, over weirs, &c.—Velocities of rivers.
3. Contrivances to measure the velocity of running waters.

## CHAPTER VI.—PNEUMATICS.

1. Weight and equilibrium of air and elastic fluids.
2. Machines for raising water by the pressure of the atmosphere.
3. Force of the wind.

## SECT.

## CHAPTER VII.—MECHANICAL AGENTS.

1. Water as a mechanical agent.
2. Air as a mechanical agent.—Coulomb's experiments.
3. Mechanical agents depending upon heat. The Steam Engine.—Table of Pressure and Temperature of Steam.—General description of the mode of action of the steam engine.—Theory of the same.—Description of various engines, and formulæ for calculating their power: practical application.
4. Animal strength as a mechanical agent.

## CHAPTER VIII.—STRENGTH OF MATERIALS.

1. Results of experiments, and principles upon which they should be practically applied.
2. Strength of materials to resist tensile and crushing strains.—Strength of columns.
3. Elasticity and elongation of bodies subjected to a crushing or tensile strain.
4. On the strength of materials subjected to a transverse strain.—Longitudinal form of beam of uniform strength.—Transverse strength of other materials than cast iron.—The strength of beams according to the manner in which the load is distributed.
5. Elasticity of bodies subjected to a transverse strain.
6. Strength of materials to resist torsion.

## APPENDIX.

- I. Table of Logarithmic Differences.
- II. Table of Logarithms of Numbers, from 1 to 100.
- III. Table of Logarithms of Numbers, from 100 to 10,000.
- IV. Table of Logarithmic Sines, Tangents, Secants, &c.
- V. Table of Useful Factors, extending to several places of Decimals.
- VI. Table of various Useful Numbers, with their Logarithms.
- VII. Table of Diameters, Areas, and Circumferences of Circles, &c.
- VIII. Table of Relations of the Arc, Abscissa, Ordinate and Subnormal, in the Catenary.
- IX. Tables of the Lengths and Vibrations of Pendulums.
- X. Table of Specific Gravities.
- XI. Table of Weight of Materials frequently employed in Construction.
- XII. Principles of Chronometers.
- XIII. Select Mechanical Expedients.
- XIV. Observations on the Effect of Old London Bridge on the Tides, &c.
- XV. Professor Farish on Isometrical Perspective.









